MASSACHUSETTS CURRICULUM FRAMEWORK

FOR

MATHEMATICS

Grades Pre-Kindergarten to 12

Incorporating the Common Core State Standards for Mathematics

---

Discussion Draft for the Board of Elementary and Secondary Education

---

COPY EDITING IN PROGRESS

DECEMBER 2010

Massachusetts Department of
ELEMENTARY & SECONDARY
EDUCATION

This document was prepared by the
Massachusetts Department of Elementary and Secondary Education
Mitchell D. Chester, Ed.D. Commissioner

Massachusetts Department of Elementary and Secondary Education
75 Pleasant Street, Malden, MA 02148-4906
Phone 781-338-3000 TTY: N.E.T. Relay 800-439-2370
www.doe.mass.edu

Massachusetts Department of Elementary and Secondary Education

75 Pleasant Street, Malden, Massachusetts 02148-4906 *Telephone: (781) 338-3000*
TTY: N.E.T. Relay 1-800-439-2370

Mitchell D. Chester, Ed.D.
Commissioner

December 2010

Dear Colleagues,

I am pleased to present to you the *Massachusetts Curriculum Framework for Mathematics, Grades Pre-Kindergarten to 12* adopted by the Board of Elementary and Secondary Education in December 2010. This framework merges the Common Core State Standards for Mathematics with Massachusetts standards and other features. These pre-kindergarten to grade 12 standards are based on research and effective practice and will enable teachers and administrators to strengthen curriculum, instruction, and assessment.

In partnership with the Department of Early Education and Care (EEC), we added pre-kindergarten standards that were collaboratively developed by early childhood educators from the Department of Elementary and Secondary Education (ESE), EEC mathematics staff, and early childhood specialists across the state. The pre-kindergarten standards were approved by the Board of Early Education and Care in December 2010. These pre-kindergarten standards lay a strong necessary foundation for the kindergarten standards.

I am proud of the work that has been accomplished. The comments and suggestions received during the revision process of the 2000 Mathematics Framework as well as comments on the Common Core State Standards as they were being developed have strengthened this framework. I want to thank everyone who worked with us to create challenging learning standards for Massachusetts students.

We will continue to work with schools and districts to implement the 2011 Massachusetts Curriculum Framework for Mathematics over the next several years, and we encourage your comments as you use it. All of the frameworks are subject to continuous review and improvement, for the benefit of the students of the Commonwealth.

Thank you again for your ongoing support and for your commitment to achieving the goals of improved student achievement for all students.

Sincerely,

Mitchell D. Chester

Mitchell D. Chester, Ed.D.
Commissioner of Education

Acknowledgements for the Massachusetts Curriculum Framework for Mathematics

The 2011 *Massachusetts Curriculum Framework for Mathematics* is the result of the contributions of many educators across the state. The Department of Elementary and Secondary Education wishes to thank all of the Massachusetts groups that contributed to the development of these mathematics standards and all of the individual teachers, administrators, mathematicians, mathematics education faculty, and parents who took the time to provide thoughtful comments during the public comment periods.

Lead Writers, Common Core State Standards
Phil Daro, Senior Fellow, America's Choice
William McCallum, Ph.D., University Distinguished Professor and Head, Department of Mathematics, University of Arizona; and Mathematics Consultant, Achieve
Jason Zimba, Ph.D., Professor of Physics and Mathematics, and the Center for the Advancement of Public Action, Bennington College; and Co-founder, Student Achievement Partners

Lead Writers, Massachusetts Department of Elementary and Secondary Education, 2011 Massachusetts Curriculum Framework for Mathematics
Barbara Libby, Director, Office for Mathematics, Science and Technology/Engineering, member of the Common Core State Standards for Mathematics Writing Group
Sharyn Sweeney, Mathematics Standards and Curriculum Coordinator, member of the Common Core State Standards for Mathematics Writing Group
Kathleen Coleman, Writer Consultant, Coleman Educational Research, LLC

Massachusetts Contributors, 2008–2010
David Allen, High School Mathematics Teacher, Lawrence Public Schools

Jennifer Beineke, Ph.D., Associate Professor of Mathematics, Western New England College

Ann-Marie Belanger, Mathematics Teacher, Greater New Bedford Regional Vocational Technical High School

Kristine Blum, Sr. Education Manager, North Shore & Merrimack Valley, Junior Achievement of Northern New England

Margaret Brooks, Ph.D., Chair and Professor of Economics, Bridgewater State University President, Massachusetts Council on Economic Education

Kristine Chase, Elementary teacher, Duxbury Public Schools

Andrew Chen, Ph.D., President, Edutron

Joshua Cohen, Ph.D., Research Associate Professor, Tufts University School of Medicine

Anne Marie Condike, K–5 Mathematics Coordinator, Westford Public Schools

Michael Coppolino, Middle School Mathematics Teacher, Waltham Public Schools

Matthew Costa, Director Mathematics-K–12/Science K–12/ Tech K–12, Revere Public Schools

Joyce Cutler, Ed.D., Associate Professor and Mathematics Chair, Framingham State University

Valerie M. Daniel, Site Coordinator for the National Center for Teacher Effectiveness / Mathematics Coach, Boston Public Schools

Marie Enochty, Community Advocates for Young Learners Institute

Marcia Ferris, Director, Massachusetts Association for the Education of Young Children

Janet Forti, Middle School Mathematics Teacher, Medford Public Schools

Thomas Fortmann, Former Member, Board of Elementary and Secondary Education

Solomon Friedberg, Ph.D., Professor and Chair of Mathematics, Boston College

Lynne Godfrey, Induction Director, Boston Teacher Residency

Victoria Grisanti, Senior Manager, Community Involvement, EMC^2; Massachusetts Business Alliance for Education representative

George (Scott) Guild, Director of Economic Education, Federal Reserve Bank of Boston

Carol Hay, Professor and Chair of Mathematics; Middlesex Community College

Douglas Holley, Director of Mathematics K–12, Hingham Public Schools

Patricia Izzi, Mathematics Department Coordinator, Attleboro High School

Steven Glenn Jackson, Ph.D., Associate Professor; UMass Boston

Niaz Karim, Principal, Valmo Villages

Naseem Jaffer, Mathematics Coach Consultant

Dianne Kelly, Assistant Superintendent, Revere Public Schools

Kelty Kelley, Early Childhood Coordinator, Canton Public Schools

Joanna D. Krainski, Middle School Mathematics Coordinator and Mathematics Teacher, Tewksbury Public Schools

Raynold Lewis, Ph.D., Professor, Education Chairperson, Worcester State University

Barbara Malkas, Deputy Superintendent of Schools, Pittsfield Public Schools

Susan V. Mason, High School Mathematics Teacher, Springfield Public Schools

Cathy McCulley, Elementary Teacher, North Middlesex Regional School District

Lisa Mikus, Elementary Teacher, Newton Public Schools

Vicki Milstein, Principal of Early Education, Brookline Public Schools

Maura Murray, Ph.D.; Associate Professor of Mathematics, Salem State University

Gregory Nelson, Ph.D., Professor Elementary and Early Childhood Education, Bridgewater State University

Pendred Noyce, M.D., Trustee, Noyce Foundation

Leah Palmer, English Language Learner Teacher, Wellesley Public Schools

Andrew Perry, Ph.D., Associate Professor of Mathematics and Computer Science; Springfield College

Katherine Richard, Associate Director of Mathematics Programs, Lesley University

Daniel Rouse, Ed.D., Mathematics and Computer Teacher, Dedham Public Schools

Linda Santry, (Retired) Coordinator of Math and Science, PreK–8, Brockton Public Schools

Jason Sachs, Director of Early Childhood, Boston Public Schools

Elizabeth Schaper, Ed.D., Assistant Superintendent; Tantasqua Regional/School Union 61 Districts

Wilfried Schmid, Ph.D., Dwight Parker Robinson Professor of Mathematics, Harvard University

Denise Sessler, High School Mathematics Teacher, Harwich High School

Glenn Stevens, Ph.D., Professor of Mathematics, Boston University

Nancy Topping-Tailby, Executive Director, Massachusetts Head Start Association

Elizabeth Walsh, Elementary Inclusion Teacher, Wachusett Regional School District

Jillian Willey, Middle School Mathematics Teacher, Boston Public Schools

Christopher Woodin, Mathematics Teacher and Department Chair, Landmark School

Andi Wrenn, Member, Massachusetts Financial Education Collaborative, K–16 Subcommittee

Department of Elementary and Secondary Education Staff

Alice Barton, Early Education Specialist

Emily Caille, Education Specialist

Haley Freeman, Mathematics Test Development Specialist

Jacob Foster, Director of Science and Technology/Engineering

Nyal Fuentes, Career and College Readiness Specialist

Simone Harvey, Mathematics Test Development Specialist

Jennifer Hawkins, Administrator of Mathematics Test Development

Mark Johnson, Former Director, Test Development

Carol Lach, Title II B Coordinator

Life LeGeros, Director, Statewide Mathematics Initiatives

Jeffrey Nellhaus, Deputy Commissioner

David Parker, Regional Support Manager

Stafford Peat, Director (Retired), Office of Secondary Support

Julia Phelps, Executive Director, Curriculum and Instruction Center

Meto Raha, Mathematics Targeted Assistance Specialist

Donna Traynham, Education Specialist

Emily Veader, Mathematics Targeted Assistance Specialist

Susan Wheltle, Director, Office of Humanities, Arts and Social Sciences

Department of Early Education and Care Staff

Sherri Killins, Commissioner

Phil Baimas, Director of Educator and Provider Support

Katie DeVita, Educator Provider Support Specialist

Table of Contents

Introduction

Background

The Massachusetts Curriculum Framework for Mathematics builds on the Common Core State Standards for Mathematics. The standards in this framework are the culmination of an extended, broad-based effort to fulfill the charge issued by the states to create the next generation of prek-12 standards in order to help ensure that all students are college and career ready in mathematics no later than the end of high school.

In 2008 the Massachusetts Department of Elementary and Secondary Education convened a team of educators to revise the existing Mathematics Curriculum Framework and, when the Council of Chief State School Officers (CCSSO) and the National Governors Association Center for Best Practice (NGA) began a multi-state standards development initiative in 2009, the two efforts merged. The standards in this document draw on the most important international models as well as research and input from numerous sources, including state departments of education, scholars, assessment developers, professional organizations, educators from pre-kindergarten through college, and parents, students, and other members of the public. In their design and content, refined through successive drafts and numerous rounds of feedback, the Standards represent a synthesis of the best elements of standards-related work to date and an important advance over that previous work.

As specified by CCSSO and NGA, the Standards are (1) research and evidence based, (2) aligned with college and work expectations, (3) rigorous, and (4) internationally benchmarked. A particular standard was included in the document only when the best available evidence indicated that its mastery was essential for college and career readiness in a twenty-first-century, globally competitive society. The standards are intended to be a living work: as new and better evidence emerges, the standards will be revised accordingly.

Unique Massachusetts Standards and Features
Staff at the Massachusetts Department of Education worked closely with the Common Core writing team to ensure that the resulting standards were comprehensive and organized in ways to make them useful for teachers. In contrast to earlier Massachusetts Mathematics standards, these standards are written for individual grades. To the Common Core K-12 standards we have added a select number of standards pre-kindergarten- high school for further clarity and coherence. The Massachusetts additions are coded with "MA" at the beginning of the standard.

Highlights of the 2011 Massachusetts Curriculum Framework for Mathematics:

- Grade-level content standards, pre-kindergarten to grade 8. Each grade level includes an introduction and articulates a small number of critical mathematical concepts/areas that should be the focus for this grade.
- New to the 2011 Mathematics Framework are the Standards for Mathematical Practice that describe mathematically proficient students and should be a part of the instructional program along with the content standards.
- The pre-kindergarten through grade 8 mathematics standards present a coherent progression and a strong foundation that will prepare students for the 2011 Algebra I course. The new grade 8 mathematics standards are rigorous and include some standards that were covered in the 2000 Algebra I course. With this stronger middle school progression, students will need to progress through the grades 6-8 standards in order to be prepared for the 2011 Algebra I course.
- The High School Standards are presented by conceptual categories and in response to many educators' requests to provide models for how these standards can be configured into high school courses, this framework also presents the high school standards by courses in two pathways: the traditional pathway courses (Algebra I, Geometry, Algebra II) and the integrated pathway courses

(Mathematics I, II, and II). In addition, two advanced courses (Precalculus and Advanced Quantitative Reasoning), developed by Massachusetts educators, are included.

- Other features included in this document are revised Guiding Principles that show a strong connection to the Mathematical Practices in the framework and an updated glossary of mathematics terms that now includes graphics and tables of key mathematical rules, properties and number sets.
- Also included as Appendices are the following sections from the June 2010 Common Core State Standards document: Applications of Common Core State Standards for English Language Learners and Applications of Common Core State Standards for Students with Disabilities.

Toward Greater Focus and Coherence

For over a decade, research studies of mathematics education in high-performing countries have pointed to the conclusion that the mathematics curriculum in the United States must become substantially more focused and coherent in order to improve mathematics achievement in this country. To deliver on the promise of common standards, the standards must address the problem of a curriculum that is "a mile wide and an inch deep." These Standards are a substantial answer to that challenge and aim for clarity and specificity.

William Schmidt and Richard Houang (2002) have said that content standards and curricula are coherent if they are:

> *articulated over time as a sequence of topics and performances that are logical and reflect, where appropriate, the sequential or hierarchical nature of the disciplinary content from which the subject matter derives. That is, what and how students are taught should reflect not only the topics that fall within a certain academic discipline,* ***but also the key ideas*** *that determine how knowledge is organized and generated within that discipline. This implies that to be coherent, a set of content standards must evolve from particulars (e.g., the meaning and operations of whole numbers, including simple math facts and routine computational procedures associated with whole numbers and fractions) to deeper structures inherent in the discipline. These deeper structures then serve as a means for connecting the particulars (such as an understanding of the rational number system and its properties). (emphasis added)*

The development of these Standards began with research-based learning progressions detailing what is known today about how students' mathematical knowledge, skill, and understanding develop over time. The standards in this framework begin on page 15 with the eight Standards for Mathematical Practice.

Guiding Principles for Mathematics Programs

The following principles are philosophical statements that underlie the mathematics content and practice standards and resources in this curriculum framework. They should guide the construction and evaluation of mathematics programs in the schools and the broader community.

Guiding Principle 1: Learning
Mathematical ideas should be explored in ways that stimulate curiosity, create enjoyment of mathematics, and develop depth of understanding.

Students need to understand mathematics deeply and use it effectively. The standards of mathematical practice describe ways in which students increasingly engage with the subject matter as they grow in mathematical maturity and expertise through the elementary, middle, and high school years.

To achieve mathematical understanding, students should have a balance of mathematical procedures and conceptual understanding. Students should be actively engaged in doing meaningful mathematics, discussing mathematical ideas, and applying mathematics in interesting, thought-provoking situations. Student understanding is further developed through ongoing reflection about cognitively demanding and worthwhile tasks.

Tasks should be designed to challenge students in multiple ways. Short- and long-term investigations that connect procedures and skills with conceptual understanding are integral components of an effective mathematics program. Activities should build upon curiosity and prior knowledge, and enable students to solve progressively deeper, broader, and more sophisticated problems. Mathematical tasks reflecting sound and significant mathematics should generate active classroom talk, promote the development of conjectures, and lead to an understanding of the necessity for mathematical reasoning.

Guiding Principle 2: Teaching
An effective mathematics program is based on a carefully designed set of content standards that are clear and specific, focused, and articulated over time as a coherent sequence.

The sequence of topics and performances should be based on what is known about how students' mathematical knowledge, skill, and understanding develop over time. What and how students are taught should reflect not only the topics within mathematics but also the key ideas that determine how knowledge is organized and generated within mathematics. Students should be asked to apply their learning and to show their mathematical thinking and understanding by engaging in the first Mathematical Practice, *Making sense of problems and preserving in solving them*. This requires teachers who have a deep knowledge of mathematics as a discipline.

Mathematical problem solving is the hallmark of an effective mathematics program. Skill in mathematical problem solving requires practice with a variety of mathematical problems as well as a firm grasp of mathematical techniques and their underlying principles. Armed with this deeper knowledge, the student can then use mathematics in a flexible way to attack various problems and devise different ways of solving any particular problem. Mathematical problem solving calls for reflective thinking, persistence, learning from the ideas of others, and going back over one's own work with a critical eye. Students should construct viable arguments and critique the reasoning of others, they analyze situations and justify their conclusions and are able to communicate them to others and respond to the arguments of others. *(See Mathematical Practice 3, Construct viable arguments and critique reasoning of others.)* Students at all grades can listen or read the arguments of others and decide whether they make sense, and ask questions to clarify or improve the arguments.

Mathematical problem solving provides students with experiences to develop other mathematical practices. Success in solving mathematical problems helps to create an abiding interest in mathematics. Students learn to model with mathematics, they learn to apply the mathematics that they know to solve problems arising in everyday life, society, or the workplace. *(See Mathematical Practice 4, Model with mathematics.)*

For a mathematics program to be effective, it must also be taught by knowledgeable teachers. According to Liping Ma, "The real mathematical thinking going on in a classroom, in fact, depends heavily on the teacher's understanding of mathematics."[3] A landmark study in 1996 found that students with initially comparable academic achievement levels had vastly different academic outcomes when teachers' knowledge of the subject matter differed.[4] The message from the research is clear: having knowledgeable teachers really does matter; teacher expertise in a subject drives student achievement.

National data show that "nearly one-third of all secondary school teachers who teach mathematics have neither a major nor a minor in the subject itself, in mathematics education, or even in a related discipline."[5] While there are very effective teachers who do not have a major or minor in mathematics or in a related field, the goal should be that all future teachers have concentrated study in the field of mathematics. "Improving teachers' content subject matter knowledge and improving students' mathematics education are thus interwoven and interdependent processes that must occur simultaneously."[6]

Guiding Principle 3: Technology
Technology is an essential tool that should be used strategically in mathematics education.

Technology enhances the mathematics curriculum in many ways. Tools such as measuring instruments, manipulatives (such as base ten blocks and fraction pieces), scientific and graphing calculators, and computers with appropriate software, if properly used, contribute to a rich learning environment for developing and applying mathematical concepts. However, appropriate use of calculators is essential; calculators should not be used as a replacement for basic understanding and skills. Elementary students should learn how to perform thoroughly the basic arithmetic operations independent of the use of a calculator. Although the use of a graphing calculator can help middle and secondary students to visualize properties of functions and their graphs, graphing calculators should be used to enhance their understanding and skills rather than replace them.

Teachers and students should consider the available tools when presenting or solving a problem. Student should be familiar with tools appropriate for their grade level to be able to make sound decisions about which of these tools would be helpful. *(See Mathematical Practice 5, Use appropriate tools strategically.)*

Technology enables students to communicate ideas within the classroom or to search for information in external databases such as the Internet, an important supplement to a school's internal library resources. Technology can be especially helpful in assisting students with special needs in regular and special classrooms, at home, and in the community.

Technology changes what mathematics is to be learned and when and how it is learned. For example, currently available technology provides a dynamic approach to such mathematical concepts as functions, rates of change, geometry, and averages that was not possible in the past. Some mathematics becomes more important because technology requires it, some becomes less important because technology replaces it, and some becomes possible because technology allows it.

Guiding Principle 4: Equity
All students should have a high quality mathematics program that prepares them for college and a career.

All Massachusetts students should have high quality mathematics programs that meet the goals and expectations of these standards and address students' individual interests and talents. The standards provide clear signposts along the way to the goal of college and career readiness for all students. The standards provide for a broad range of students, from those requiring tutorial support to those with talent in mathematics. To promote achievement of these standards, teachers should encourage classroom talk, reflection, use of multiple problem solving strategies, and a positive disposition toward mathematics. They should have high expectations for all students. At every level of the education system, teachers should act on the belief that every child should learn challenging mathematics. Teachers and guidance personnel should advise students and parents about why it is important to take advanced courses in mathematics and how this will prepare students for success in college and the workplace.

All students should have the benefit of quality instructional materials, good libraries, and adequate technology. All students must have the opportunity to learn and meet the same high standards. In order to meet the needs of the greatest range of students, mathematics programs should provide the necessary intervention and support for those students who are below- or above grade-level expectations. Practice and enrichment should extend beyond the classroom. Tutorial sessions, mathematics clubs, competitions, and apprenticeships are examples of mathematics activities that promote learning.

Because mathematics is the cornerstone of many disciplines, a comprehensive curriculum should include applications to everyday life and modeling activities that demonstrate the connections among disciplines. Schools should also provide opportunities for communicating with experts in applied fields to enhance students' knowledge of these connections.

An important part of preparing students for college and careers is to ensure that they have the necessary mathematics and problem-solving skills to make sound financial decisions that they face in the world every day, including setting up a bank account; understanding student loans, credit and debit; selecting the best buy when shopping; choosing the most cost effective cell phone plan based on monthly usage, and so on.

Guiding Principle 5: Literacy Across the Content Areas
An effective mathematics program builds upon and develops students' literacy skills and knowledge.

Reading, writing, and communication skills are necessary elements of learning and engaging in mathematics, as well as in other content areas. Supporting the development of students' literacy skills will allow them to deepen their understanding of mathematics concepts and help them determine the meaning of symbols, key terms, and mathematics phrases as well as develop reasoning skills that apply across the disciplines. In reading, teachers should consistently support students' ability to gain and deepen understanding of concepts from written material by acquiring comprehension skills and strategies, as ell as specialized vocabulary and symbols. Mathematics classrooms should make use of a variety of text materials and formats, including textbooks, math journals, contextual math problems, and data presented in a variety of media.

In writing, teachers should consistently support students' ability to reason and deepen understanding of concepts and the ability to express them in a focused, precise, and convincing manner. Mathematics classrooms should incorporate a variety of written assignments ranging from math journals to formal written proofs.

In speaking and listening, teachers should provide students with opportunities for mathematical discourse, to use precise language to convey ideas, to communicate a solution, and support an argument.

Guiding Principle 6: Assessment
Assessment of student learning in mathematics should take many forms to inform instruction and learning.

A comprehensive assessment program is an integral component of an instructional program. It provides students with frequent feedback on their performance, teachers with diagnostic tools for gauging students' depth of understanding of mathematical concepts and skills, parents with information about their children's performance in the context of program goals, and administrators with a means for measuring student achievement.

Assessments take a variety of forms, require varying amounts of time, and address different aspects of student learning. Having students "think aloud" or talk through their solutions to problems permits identification of gaps in knowledge and errors in reasoning. By observing students as they work, teachers can gain insight into students' abilities to apply appropriate mathematical concepts and skills, make conjectures, and draw conclusions. Homework, mathematics journals, portfolios, oral performances, and group projects offer additional means for capturing students' thinking, knowledge of mathematics, facility with the language of mathematics, and ability to communicate what they know to others. Tests and quizzes assess knowledge of mathematical facts, operations, concepts, and skills and their efficient application to problem solving. They can also pinpoint areas in need of more practice or teaching. Taken together, the results of these different forms of assessment provide rich profiles of students' achievements in mathematics and serve as the basis for identifying curricula and instructional approaches to best develop their talents.

Assessment should also be a major component of the learning process. As students help identify goals for lessons or investigations, they gain greater awareness of what they need to learn and how they will demonstrate that learning. Engaging students in this kind of goal-setting can help them reflect on their own work, understand the standards to which they are held accountable, and take ownership of their learning.

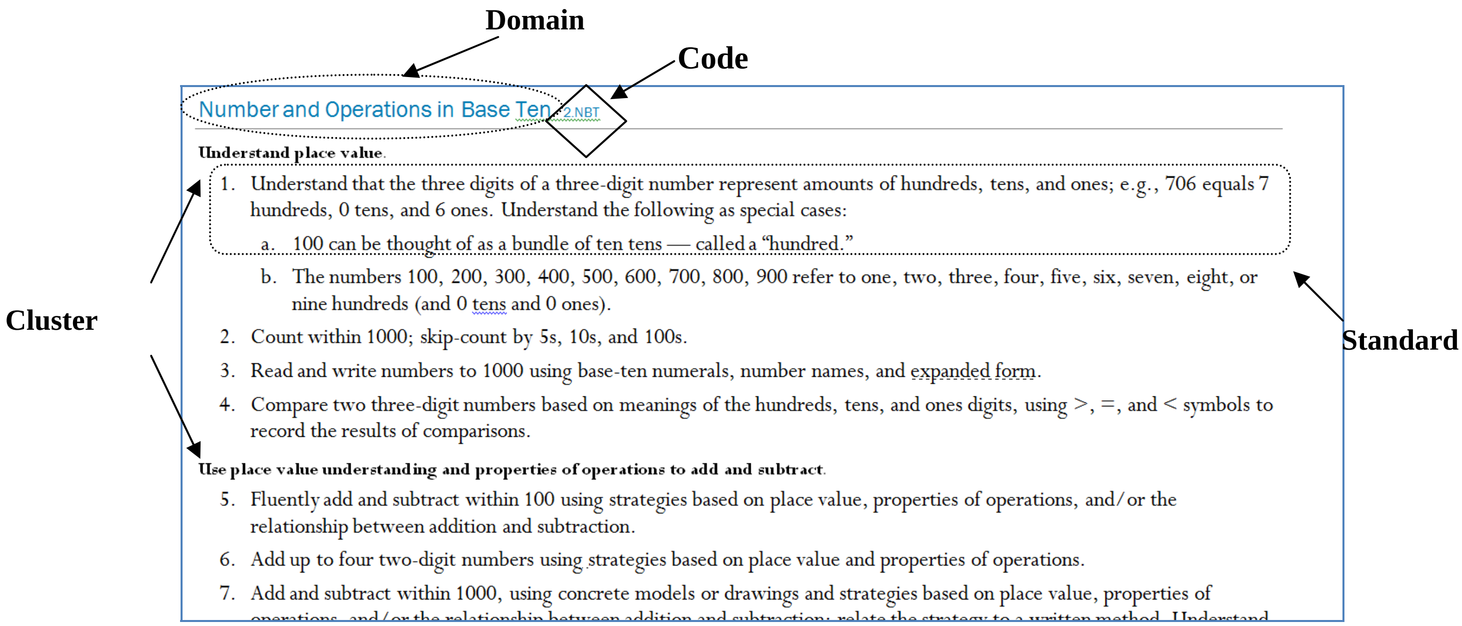
Format and Organization of the Grade Level Standards

How to read the grade level standards

Standards define what students should understand and be able to do.

Clusters are groups of related standards. Note that standards from different clusters may sometimes be closely related, because mathematics is a connected subject.

Domains are larger groups of related standards. Standards from different domains may sometimes be closely related.



Number and Operations in Base Ten 2.NBT

Understand place value.

1. Understand that the three digits of a three-digit number represent amounts of hundreds, tens, and ones; e.g., 706 equals 7 hundreds, 0 tens, and 6 ones. Understand the following as special cases:
   a. 100 can be thought of as a bundle of ten tens — called a "hundred."
   b. The numbers 100, 200, 300, 400, 500, 600, 700, 800, 900 refer to one, two, three, four, five, six, seven, eight, or nine hundreds (and 0 tens and 0 ones).
2. Count within 1000; skip-count by 5s, 10s, and 100s.
3. Read and write numbers to 1000 using base-ten numerals, number names, and expanded form.
4. Compare two three-digit numbers based on meanings of the hundreds, tens, and ones digits, using >, =, and < symbols to record the results of comparisons.

Use place value understanding and properties of operations to add and subtract.

5. Fluently add and subtract within 100 using strategies based on place value, properties of operations, and/or the relationship between addition and subtraction.
6. Add up to four two-digit numbers using strategies based on place value and properties of operations.
7. Add and subtract within 1000, using concrete models or drawings and strategies based on place value, properties of operations, and/or the relationship between addition and subtraction; relate the strategy to a written method. Understand

Each standard has a unique identifier that consists of the grade level, (PK, K, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, or 8), the domain code (see above) and the standard number. For example, the standard highlighted above would be identified as 2.NBT.1, identifying it as a grade 2 standard in the Number: Base Ten domain, and is the first standard in that domain. Standards unique to Massachusetts are included in grades Pre-kindergarten, 1, 2, 4, 5, 6, and 7. The standards unique to Massachusetts are included in the appropriate domain and cluster and are coded with "MA" to indicate that they are additions. For example, a Massachusetts addition in grade 1 "*MA.9 Write and solve number sentences from problem situations that express relationships involving addition and subtraction within 20*" is identified as MA.1.OA.9, and is included in the grade 1 content standards in the *Operations and Algebraic Thinking* domain and in the *Work with Addition and Subtraction Equations* cluster.

These Standards do not dictate curriculum or teaching methods. For example, just because topic A appears before topic B in the standards for a given grade, it does not necessarily mean that topic A must be taught before topic B. A teacher might prefer to teach topic B before topic A, or might choose to highlight connections by teaching topic A and topic B at the same time. Or, a teacher might prefer to teach a topic of his or her own choosing that leads, as a byproduct, to students reaching the standards for topics A and B.

What students can learn at any particular grade level depends upon what they have learned before. Ideally then, each standard in this document might have been phrased in the form, "Students who already know … should next come to learn …." But at present this approach is unrealistic—not least because existing education research cannot specify all such learning pathways. Of necessity therefore, grade placements for specific topics have been made on the basis of state and international comparisons and the collective experience and collective professional judgment of educators, researchers and mathematicians. One promise of common state standards is that over time they will allow research on learning progressions to inform and improve the design of standards to a much greater extent than is possible today. Learning opportunities will continue to vary across schools and school systems, and educators should make every effort to meet the needs of individual students based on their current understanding.

These Standards are not intended to be new names for old ways of doing business. They are a call to take the next step. It is time for states to work together to build on lessons learned from two decades of standards based reforms. It is time to recognize that standards are not just promises to our children, but promises we intend to keep.

Standards for Mathematical Practice

The Standards for Mathematical Practice describe varieties of expertise that mathematics educators at all levels should seek to develop in their students. These practices rest on important “processes and proficiencies” with longstanding importance in mathematics education. The first of these are the NCTM process standards of problem solving, reasoning and proof, communication, representation, and connections. The second are the strands of mathematical proficiency specified in the National Research Council’s report Adding It Up: adaptive reasoning, strategic competence, conceptual understanding (comprehension of mathematical concepts, operations and relations), procedural fluency (skill in carrying out procedures flexibly, accurately, efficiently and appropriately), and productive disposition (habitual inclination to see mathematics as sensible, useful, and worthwhile, coupled with a belief in diligence and one’s own efficacy).

1 Make sense of problems and persevere in solving them.

Mathematically proficient students start by explaining to themselves the meaning of a problem and looking for entry points to its solution. They analyze givens, constraints, relationships, and goals. They make conjectures about the form and meaning of the solution and plan a solution pathway rather than simply jumping into a solution attempt. They consider analogous problems, and try special cases and simpler forms of the original problem in order to gain insight into its solution. They monitor and evaluate their progress and change course if necessary. Older students might, depending on the context of the problem, transform algebraic expressions or change the viewing window on their graphing calculator to get the information they need. Mathematically proficient students can explain correspondences between equations, verbal descriptions, tables, and graphs or draw diagrams of important features and relationships, graph data, and search for regularity or trends. Younger students might rely on using concrete objects or pictures to help conceptualize and solve a problem. Mathematically proficient students check their answers to problems using a different method, and they continually ask themselves, “Does this make sense?” They can understand the approaches of others to solving complex problems and identify correspondences between different approaches.

2 Reason abstractly and quantitatively.

Mathematically proficient students make sense of the quantities and their relationships in problem situations. Students bring two complementary abilities to bear on problems involving quantitative relationships: the ability to decontextualize—to abstract a given situation and represent it symbolically and manipulate the representing symbols as if they have a life of their own, without necessarily attending to their referents—and the ability to contextualize, to pause as needed during the manipulation process in order to probe into the referents for the symbols involved. Quantitative reasoning entails habits of creating a coherent representation of the problem at hand; considering the units involved; attending to the meaning of quantities, not just how to compute them; and knowing and flexibly using different properties of operations and objects.

3 Construct viable arguments and critique the reasoning of others.

Mathematically proficient students understand and use stated assumptions, definitions, and previously established results in constructing arguments. They make conjectures and build a logical progression of statements to explore the truth of their conjectures. They are able to analyze situations by breaking them into cases, and can recognize and use counterexamples. They justify their conclusions, communicate them to others, and respond to the arguments of others. They reason inductively about data, making plausible arguments that take into account the context from which the data arose. Mathematically proficient students are also able to compare the effectiveness of two plausible arguments, distinguish correct logic or reasoning from that which is flawed, and—if there is a flaw in an argument—explain what it is. Elementary students can construct arguments using concrete referents such as objects, drawings, diagrams, and actions. Such arguments can make sense and be correct, even though they are not generalized or made formal until later grades. Later, students learn to determine domains to which an argument applies. Students at all grades can listen or read the arguments of others, decide whether they make sense, and ask useful questions to clarify or improve the arguments.

4 Model with mathematics.

Mathematically proficient students can apply the mathematics they know to solve problems arising in everyday life, society, and the workplace. In early grades, this might be as simple as writing an addition equation to describe a situation. In middle grades, a student might apply proportional reasoning to plan a school event or analyze a problem in the community. By high school, a student might use geometry to solve a design problem or use a function to describe how one quantity of interest depends on another. Mathematically proficient students who can apply what they know are comfortable making assumptions and approximations to simplify a complicated situation, realizing that these may need revision later. They are able to identify important quantities in a practical situation and map their relationships using such tools as diagrams, two-way tables, graphs, flowcharts and formulas. They can analyze those relationships mathematically to draw conclusions. They routinely interpret their mathematical results in the context of the situation and reflect on whether the results make sense, possibly improving the model if it has not served its purpose.

5 Use appropriate tools strategically.

Mathematically proficient students consider the available tools when solving a mathematical problem. These tools might include pencil and paper, concrete models, a ruler, a protractor, a calculator, a spreadsheet, a computer algebra system, a statistical package, or dynamic geometry software. Proficient students are sufficiently familiar with tools appropriate for their grade or course to make sound decisions about when each of these tools might be helpful, recognizing both the insight to be gained and their limitations. For example, mathematically proficient high school students analyze graphs of functions and solutions generated using a graphing calculator. They detect possible errors by strategically using estimation and other mathematical knowledge. When making mathematical models, they know that technology can enable them to visualize the results of varying assumptions, explore consequences, and compare predictions with data. Mathematically proficient students at various grade levels are able to identify relevant external mathematical resources, such as digital content located on a website, and use them to pose or solve problems. They are able to use technological tools to explore and deepen their understanding of concepts.

6 Attend to precision.

Mathematically proficient students try to communicate precisely to others. They try to use clear definitions in discussion with others and in their own reasoning. They state the meaning of the symbols they choose, including using the equal sign consistently and appropriately. They are careful about specifying units of measure, and labeling axes to clarify the correspondence with quantities in a problem. They calculate accurately and efficiently, express numerical answers with a degree of precision appropriate for the problem context. In the elementary grades, students give carefully formulated explanations to each other. By the time they reach high school they have learned to examine claims and make explicit use of definitions.

7 Look for and make use of structure.

Mathematically proficient students look closely to discern a pattern or structure. Young students, for example, might notice that three and seven more is the same amount as seven and three more, or they may sort a collection of shapes according to how many sides the shapes have. Later, students will see 7×8 equals the well remembered $7 \times 5 + 7 \times 3$, in preparation for learning about the distributive property. In the expression $x^2 + 9x + 14$, older students can see the 14 as 2×7 and the 9 as $2 + 7$. They recognize the significance of an existing line in a geometric figure and can use the strategy of drawing an auxiliary line for solving problems. They also can step back for an overview and shift perspective. They can see complicated things, such as some algebraic expressions, as single objects or as being composed of several objects. For example, they can see $5 - 3(x - y)^2$ as 5 minus a positive number times a square and use that to realize that its value cannot be more than 5 for any real numbers x and y.

8 Look for and express regularity in repeated reasoning.

Mathematically proficient students notice if calculations are repeated, and look both for general methods and for shortcuts. Upper elementary students might notice when dividing 25 by 11 that they are repeating the same calculations over and over again, and conclude they have a repeating decimal. By paying attention to the calculation of slope as they repeatedly check whether points are on the line through (1, 2) with slope 3, middle school students might abstract the equation $(y - 2)/(x - 1) = 3$. Noticing the regularity in the way terms cancel when expanding $(x - 1)(x + 1)$, $(x - 1)(x^2 + x + 1)$, and $(x - 1)(x^3 + x^2 + x + 1)$ might lead them to the general formula for the sum of a geometric series. As they work to solve a problem, mathematically proficient students maintain oversight of the process, while attending to the details. They continually evaluate the reasonableness of their intermediate results.

Connecting the Standards for Mathematical Practice to the Standards for Mathematical Content

The Standards for Mathematical Practice describe ways in which developing student practitioners of the discipline of mathematics increasingly ought to engage with the subject matter as they grow in mathematical maturity and expertise throughout the elementary, middle and high school years. Designers of curricula, assessments, and professional development should all attend to the need to connect the mathematical practices to mathematical content in mathematics instruction.

The Standards for Mathematical Content are a balanced combination of procedure and understanding. Expectations that begin with the word “understand” are often especially good opportunities to connect the practices to the content. Students who lack understanding of a topic may rely on procedures too heavily. Without a flexible base from which to work, they may be less likely to consider analogous problems, represent problems coherently, justify conclusions, apply the mathematics to practical situations, use technology mindfully to work with the mathematics, explain the mathematics accurately to other students, step back for an overview, or deviate from a known procedure to find a shortcut. In short, a lack of understanding effectively prevents a student from engaging in the mathematical practices.

In this respect, those content standards which set an expectation of understanding are potential “points of intersection” between the Standards for Mathematical Content and the Standards for Mathematical Practice. These points of intersection are intended to be weighted toward central and generative concepts in the school mathematics curriculum that most merit the time, resources, innovative energies, and focus necessary to qualitatively improve the curriculum, instruction, assessment, professional development, and student achievement in mathematics.

Pre-kindergarten

The preschool/pre-kindergarten population includes children between at least 2 years, 9 months until they are kindergarten eligible. A majority attend programs in diverse settings—community-based early care and education centers, family child care, Head Start, and public preschools. Some children do not attend any formal program. These standards apply to children who are at the end of that age group, meaning older four- and younger five-year olds.

In this age group, foundations of mathematical understanding are formed out of children's experiences with real objects and materials. The standards can be promoted through play and exploration activities, and embedded in almost all daily activities. They should not be limited to "math time." These mathematics standards correspond with the learning activities in the *Massachusetts Guidelines for Preschool Learning Experiences* (2003). The standards should be considered guideposts to facilitate young children's underlying mathematical understanding.

In preschool or pre-kindergarten, activity time should focus on two critical areas: (1) developing an understanding of whole numbers to 10, including concepts of one-to-one correspondence, counting, cardinality (the number of items in a set), and comparison; (2) recognizing two-dimensional shapes, describing spatial relationships, and sorting and classifying objects by one or more attributes. Relatively more learning time should be devoted to developing children's sense of number as quantity than to other mathematics topics.

(1) These young children begin counting and quantifying numbers up to 10. Children begin with oral counting and recognition of numerals and word names for numbers. Experience with counting naturally leads to quantification. Children count objects and learn that the sizes, shapes, positions, or purposes of objects do not affect the total number of objects in the group. One-to-one correspondence with its matching of elements between the sets, provides the foundation for the comparison of groups and the development of comparative language such as, *more than, less than,* and *equal to*.

(2) Young children explore shapes and the relationships among them. They identify the attributes of different shapes including the length, area, weight by using vocabulary such as: *long, short, tall, heavy, light, big, small, wide, narrow*. They compare objects using comparative language such as: *longer/shorter, same length, heavier/lighter*. They explore and create 2- and 3-dimensional shapes by using various manipulative and play materials such as: popsicle sticks, blocks, pipe cleaners, and pattern blocks. They sort, categorize, and classify objects and identify basic 2-dimensional shapes using the appropriate language.

The Mathematical Practice Standards complement the content standards at each grade level so that students increasingly engage with the subject matter as they grow in mathematical maturity and expertise.

Pre-kindergarten Overview

Counting and Cardinality
- Know number names and count objects.
- Count to tell the number of objects**.**
- Compare number of objects.

Operations and Algebraic Thinking
- Model real-world addition and subtraction problems.

Measurement and Data
- Describe and compare measurable attributes.
- Classify and sort objects by attributes.

Geometry
- Understand position of objects in space.
- Identify and describe two-dimensional shapes.
- Represent three-dimensional shapes.

Mathematical Practices

1. Make sense of problems and persevere in solving them.
2. Reason abstractly and quantitatively.
3. Construct viable arguments and critique the reasoning of others.
4. Model with mathematics.
5. Use appropriate tools strategically.
6. Attend to precision.
7. Look for and make use of structure.
8. Look for and express regularity in repeated reasoning.

Counting and Cardinality — PK.CC

Know number names and the counting sequence.

MA.1 Listen to and say the names of numbers in meaningful contexts.

MA.2 Recognize and name written numerals 0 – 10.

Count to tell the number of objects.

MA.3 Understand the relationship between numerals and quantities up to ten.

Compare numbers.

MA.4 Count many kinds of concrete objects and actions up to ten, using one-to-one correspondence, and accurately count as many as seven things in a scattered configuration.

MA.5 Use comparative language such as *more/less than, equal to,* to compare and describe collections of objects.

Operations and Algebraic Thinking — PK.OA

Understand addition as putting together and adding to, and understand subtraction as taking apart and taking from.

MA.1 Use concrete objects to model real-world addition (putting together) and subtraction (taking apart) problems up through five.

Measurement and Data — PK.MD

Describe and compare measurable attributes.

MA.1 Recognize the attributes of length, area, weight, and capacity of everyday objects using appropriate vocabulary (e.g., *long, short, tall, heavy, light, big, small, wide, narrow*).

MA.2 Compare the attributes of length and weight for two objects, including longer/shorter, same length; heavier/lighter, same weight; holds more/less, holds the same amount.

Classify objects and count the number of objects in each category.

MA.3 Sort, categorize, and classify objects by more than one attribute.

Work with money.

MA.4 Recognize that certain objects are coins and that dollars and coins represent money.

Geometry — PK.G

Identify and describe shapes (squares, circles, triangles, rectangles).

MA.1 Identify relative position of objects in space, and use appropriate language (e.g., *beside, inside, next to, close to, above, below, apart*).

MA.2 Identify various two-dimensional shapes using appropriate language.

Analyze, compare, create, and compose shapes.

MA.3 Create and represent three-dimensional shapes (ball/sphere, square box/cube, tube/cylinder) using various manipulative materials, such as popsicle sticks, blocks, pipe cleaners, pattern blocks, and so on.

Kindergarten

In Kindergarten, instructional time should focus on two critical areas: (1) representing, relating, and operating on whole numbers, initially with sets of objects; (2) describing shapes and space. More learning time in Kindergarten should be devoted to number than to other topics.

(1) Students use numbers, including written numerals, to represent quantities and to solve quantitative problems, such as counting objects in a set; counting out a given number of objects; comparing sets or numerals; and modeling simple joining and separating situations with sets of objects, or eventually with equations such as 5 + 2 = 7 and 7 – 2 = 5. (Kindergarten students should see addition and subtraction equations, and student writing of equations in Kindergarten is encouraged, but it is not required.) Students choose, combine, and apply effective strategies for answering quantitative questions, including quickly recognizing the cardinalities of small sets of objects, counting and producing sets of given sizes, counting the number of objects in combined sets, or counting the number of objects that remain in a set after some are taken away.

(2) Students describe their physical world using geometric ideas (e.g., shape, orientation, spatial relations) and vocabulary. They identify, name, and describe basic two-dimensional shapes, such as squares, triangles, circles, rectangles, and hexagons, presented in a variety of ways (e.g., with different sizes and orientations), as well as three-dimensional shapes such as cubes, cones, cylinders, and spheres. They use basic shapes and spatial reasoning to model objects in their environment and to construct more complex shapes.

The Mathematical Practice Standards complement the content standards at each grade level so that students increasingly engage with the subject matter as they grow in mathematical maturity and expertise.

Grade K Overview

Counting and Cardinality

- Know number names and the count sequence.
- Count to tell the number of objects.
- Compare numbers.

Operations and Algebraic Thinking

- Understand addition as putting together and adding to, and understand subtraction as taking apart and taking from.

Number and Operations in Base Ten

- Work with numbers 11–19 to gain foundations for place value.

Measurement and Data

- Describe and compare measurable attributes.
- Classify objects and count the number of objects in categories.

Geometry

- Identify and describe shapes.
- Analyze, compare, create, and compose shapes

Mathematical Practices

1. Make sense of problems and persevere in solving them.
2. Reason abstractly and quantitatively.
3. Construct viable arguments and critique the reasoning of others.
4. Model with mathematics.
5. Use appropriate tools strategically.
6. Attend to precision.
7. Look for and make use of structure.
8. Look for and express regularity in repeated reasoning.

Counting and Cardinality K.CC

Know number names and the count sequence.

1. Count to 100 by ones and by tens.
2. Count forward beginning from a given number within the known sequence (instead of having to begin at 1).
3. Write numbers from 0 to 20. Represent a number of objects with a written numeral 0–20 (with 0 representing a count of no objects).

Count to tell the number of objects.

4. Understand the relationship between numbers and quantities; connect counting to cardinality.
   a. When counting objects, say the number names in the standard order, pairing each object with one and only one number name and each number name with one and only one object.
   b. Understand that the last number name said tells the number of objects counted. The number of objects is the same regardless of their arrangement or the order in which they were counted.
   c. Understand that each successive number name refers to a quantity that is one larger.
5. Count to answer "how many?" questions about as many as 20 things arranged in a line, a rectangular array, or a circle, or as many as 10 things in a scattered configuration; given a number from 1–20, count out that many objects. Compare numbers.
6. Identify whether the number of objects in one group is greater than, less than, or equal to the number of objects in another group, e.g., by using matching and counting strategies.[1]
7. Compare two numbers between 1 and 10 presented as written numerals.

Operations and Algebraic Thinking K.OA

Understand addition as putting together and adding to, and understand subtraction as taking apart and taking from.

1. Represent addition and subtraction with objects, fingers, mental images, drawings[2], sounds (e.g., claps), acting out situations, verbal explanations, expressions, or equations.
2. Solve addition and subtraction word problems, and add and subtract within 10, e.g., by using objects or drawings to represent the problem.
3. Decompose numbers less than or equal to 10 into pairs in more than one way, e.g., by using objects or drawings, and record each decomposition by a drawing or equation (e.g., 5 = 2 + 3 and 5 = 4 + 1).
4. For any number from 1 to 9, find the number that makes 10 when added to the given number, e.g., by using objects or drawings, and record the answer with a drawing or equation.
5. Fluently add and subtract within 5.

Number and Operations in Base Ten K.NBT

Work with numbers 11–19 to gain foundations for place value.

1. Compose and decompose numbers from 11 to 19 into ten ones and some further ones, e.g., by using objects or drawings, and record each composition or decomposition by a drawing or equation (e.g., 18 = 10 + 8); understand that these numbers are composed of ten ones and one, two, three, four, five, six, seven, eight, or nine ones.

Measurement and Data K.MD

Describe and compare measurable attributes.

1. Describe measurable attributes of objects, such as length or weight. Describe several measurable attributes of a single object.
2. Directly compare two objects with a measurable attribute in common, to see which object has "more of"/"less of" the attribute, and describe the difference. *For example, directly compare the heights of two children and describe one child as taller/shorter.*

[1] Include groups with up to ten objects.
[2] Drawings need not show details, but should show the mathematics in the problem. (This applies wherever drawings are mentioned in the Standards.)

Classify objects and count the number of objects in each category.

3. Classify objects into given categories; count the numbers of objects in each category and sort the categories by count.[3]

Geometry **K.G**

Identify and describe shapes (squares, circles, triangles, rectangles, hexagons, cubes, cones, cylinders, and spheres).

1. Describe objects in the environment using names of shapes, and describe the relative positions of these objects using terms such as *above*, *below*, *beside*, *in front of*, *behind*, and *next to*.
2. Correctly name shapes regardless of their orientations or overall size.
3. Identify shapes as two-dimensional (lying in a plane, "flat") or three-dimensional ("solid").

Analyze, compare, create, and compose shapes.

4. Analyze and compare two- and three-dimensional shapes, in different sizes and orientations, using informal language to describe their similarities, differences, parts (e.g., number of sides and vertices/"corners") and other attributes (e.g., having sides of equal length).
5. Model shapes in the world by building shapes from components (e.g., sticks and clay balls) and drawing shapes.
6. Compose simple shapes to form larger shapes. *For example, "Can you join these two triangles with full sides touching to make a rectangle?"*

[3] *Limit category counts to be less than or equal to 10.*

Grade 1

In Grade 1, instructional time should focus on four critical areas: (1) developing understanding of addition, subtraction, and strategies for addition and subtraction within 20; (2) developing understanding of whole number relationships and place value, including grouping in tens and ones; (3) developing understanding of linear measurement and measuring lengths as iterating length units; and (4) reasoning about attributes of, and composing and decomposing geometric shapes.

(1) Students develop strategies for adding and subtracting whole numbers based on their prior work with small numbers. They use a variety of models, including discrete objects and length-based models (e.g., cubes connected to form lengths), to model add-to, take-from, put-together, take-apart, and compare situations to develop meaning for the operations of addition and subtraction, and to develop strategies to solve arithmetic problems with these operations. Students understand connections between counting and addition and subtraction (e.g., adding two is the same as counting on two). They use properties of addition to add whole numbers and to create and use increasingly sophisticated strategies based on these properties (e.g., "making tens") to solve addition and subtraction problems within 20. By comparing a variety of solution strategies, children build their understanding of the relationship between addition and subtraction.

(2) Students develop, discuss, and use efficient, accurate, and generalizable methods to add within 100 and subtract multiples of 10. They compare whole numbers (at least to 100) to develop understanding of and solve problems involving their relative sizes. They think of whole numbers between 10 and 100 in terms of tens and ones (especially recognizing the numbers 11 to 19 as composed of a ten and some ones). Through activities that build number sense, they understand the order of the counting numbers and their relative magnitudes.

(3) Students develop an understanding of the meaning and processes of measurement, including underlying concepts such as iterating (the mental activity of building up the length of an object with equal-sized units) and the transitivity principle for indirect measurement.[4]

(4) Students compose and decompose plane or solid figures (e.g., put two triangles together to make a quadrilateral) and build understanding of part-whole relationships as well as the properties of the original and composite shapes. As they combine shapes, they recognize them from different perspectives and orientations, describe their geometric attributes, and determine how they are alike and different, to develop the background for measurement and for initial understandings of properties such as congruence and symmetry.

The Mathematical Practice Standards complement the content standards at each grade level so that students increasingly engage with the subject matter as they grow in mathematical maturity and expertise.

[4] Students should apply the principle of transitivity of measurement to make indirect comparisons, but they need not use this technical term.

Grade 1 Overview

Mathematical Practices

1. Make sense of problems and persevere in solving them.
2. Reason abstractly and quantitatively.
3. Construct viable arguments and critique the reasoning of others.
4. Model with mathematics.
5. Use appropriate tools strategically.
6. Attend to precision.
7. Look for and make use of structure.
8. Look for and express regularity in repeated reasoning.

Operations and Algebraic Thinking

- Represent and solve problems involving addition and subtraction.
- Understand and apply properties of operations and the relationship between addition and subtraction.
- Add and subtract within 20.
- Work with addition and subtraction equations.

Number and Operations in Base Ten

- Extend the counting sequence.
- Understand place value.
- Use place value understanding and properties of operations to add and subtract.

Measurement and Data

- Measure lengths indirectly and by iterating length units.
- Tell and write time.
- Represent and interpret data.
- Work with money.

Geometry

- Reason with shapes and their attributes

Operations and Algebraic Thinking 1.OA

Represent and solve problems involving addition and subtraction.

1. Use addition and subtraction within 20 to solve word problems involving situations of adding to, taking from, putting together, taking apart, and comparing, with unknowns in all positions, e.g., by using objects, drawings, and equations with a symbol for the unknown number to represent the problem.[5]
2. Solve word problems that call for addition of three whole numbers whose sum is less than or equal to 20, e.g., by using objects, drawings, and equations with a symbol for the unknown number to represent the problem.

Understand and apply properties of operations and the relationship between addition and subtraction.

3. Apply properties of operations as strategies to add and subtract.[6] *Examples: If 8 + 3 = 11 is known, then 3 + 8 = 11 is also known. (Commutative property of addition.) To add 2 + 6 + 4, the second two numbers can be added to make a ten, so 2 + 6 + 4 = 2 + 10 = 12. (Associative property of addition.)*
4. Understand subtraction as an unknown-addend problem. *For example, subtract 10 – 8 by finding the number that makes 10 when added to 8.*

Add and subtract within 20.

5. Relate counting to addition and subtraction (e.g., by counting on 2 to add 2).
6. Add and subtract within 20, demonstrating fluency for addition and subtraction within 10. Use mental strategies such as counting on; making ten (e.g., 8 + 6 = 8 + 2 + 4 = 10 + 4 = 14); decomposing a number leading to a ten (e.g., 13 – 4 = 13 – 3 – 1 = 10 – 1 = 9); using the relationship between addition and subtraction (e.g., knowing that 8 + 4 = 12, one knows 12 – 8 = 4); and creating equivalent but easier or known sums (e.g., adding 6 + 7 by creating the known equivalent 6 + 6 + 1 = 12 + 1 = 13).

Work with addition and subtraction equations.

7. Understand the meaning of the equal sign, and determine if equations involving addition and subtraction are true or false. *For example, which of the following equations are true and which are false? 6 = 6, 7 = 8 – 1, 5 + 2 = 2 + 5, 4 + 1 = 5 + 2.*
8. Determine the unknown whole number in an addition or subtraction equation relating three whole numbers. *For example, determine the unknown number that makes the equation true in each of the equations 8 + ? = 11, 5 = □ – 3, 6 + 6 = □.*

MA.9 Write and solve number sentences from problem situations that express relationships involving addition and subtraction within 20.

Number and Operations in Base Ten 1.NBT

Extend the counting sequence.

1. Count to 120, starting at any number less than 120. In this range, read and write numerals and represent a number of objects with a written numeral.

Understand place value.

2. Understand that the two digits of a two-digit number represent amounts of tens and ones. Understand the following as special cases:
   a. 10 can be thought of as a bundle of ten ones—called a “ten.”
   b. The numbers from 11 to 19 are composed of a ten and one, two, three, four, five, six, seven, eight, or nine ones.
   c. The numbers 10, 20, 30, 40, 50, 60, 70, 80, 90 refer to one, two, three, four, five, six, seven, eight, or nine tens (and 0 ones).
3. Compare two two-digit numbers based on meanings of the tens and ones digits, recording the results of comparisons with the symbols >, =, and <.

Use place value understanding and properties of operations to add and subtract.

[5] See Glossary, Table 1.
[6] Students need not use formal terms for these properties.

4. Add within 100, including adding a two-digit number and a one-digit number, and adding a two-digit number and a multiple of 10, using concrete models or drawings and strategies based on place value, properties of operations, and/or the relationship between addition and subtraction; relate the strategy to a written method and explain the reasoning used. Understand that in adding two-digit numbers, one adds tens and tens, ones and ones; and sometimes it is necessary to compose a ten.
5. Given a two-digit number, mentally find 10 more or 10 less than the number, without having to count; explain the reasoning used.
6. Subtract multiples of 10 in the range 10–90 from multiples of 10 in the range 10–90 (positive or zero differences), using concrete models or drawings and strategies based on place value, properties of operations, and/or the relationship between addition and subtraction; relate the strategy to a written method and explain the reasoning used.

Measurement and Data 1.MD

Measure lengths indirectly and by iterating length units.

1. Order three objects by length; compare the lengths of two objects indirectly by using a third object.
2. Express the length of an object as a whole number of length units, by laying multiple copies of a shorter object (the length unit) end to end; understand that the length measurement of an object is the number of same-size length units that span it with no gaps or overlaps. *Limit to contexts where the object being measured is spanned by a whole number of length units with no gaps or overlaps.*

Tell and write time.

3. Tell and write time in hours and half-hours using analog and digital clocks.

Represent and interpret data.

4. Organize, represent, and interpret data with up to three categories; ask and answer questions about the total number of data points, how many in each category, and how many more or less are in one category than in another.

Work with money

MA.5. Identify the values of all U.S. coins; know their comparative values, e.g., a dime is of greater value than a nickel. Find equivalent values, e.g., a nickel is equivalent to 5 pennies. Use appropriate notation (e.g., 69¢). Use the value of coins in the solution of problems.

Geometry 1.G

Reason with shapes and their attributes.

1. Distinguish between defining attributes (e.g., triangles are closed and three-sided) versus non-defining attributes (e.g., color, orientation, overall size); build and draw shapes that possess defining attributes.
2. Compose two-dimensional shapes (rectangles, squares, trapezoids, triangles, half-circles, and quarter-circles) or three-dimensional shapes (cubes, right rectangular prisms, right circular cones, and right circular cylinders) to create a composite shape, and compose new shapes from the composite shape.[7]
3. Partition circles and rectangles into two and four equal shares, describe the shares using the words *halves*, *fourths*, and *quarters*, and use the phrases *half of*, *fourth of*, and *quarter of*. Describe the whole as two of, or four of the shares. Understand for these examples that decomposing into more equal shares creates smaller shares.

[7] Students do not need to learn formal names such as "right rectangular prism."

Grade 2

In Grade 2, instructional time should focus on four critical areas: (1) extending understanding of base-ten notation; (2) building fluency with addition and subtraction; (3) using standard units of measure; and (4) describing and analyzing shapes.

(1) Students extend their understanding of the base-ten system. This includes ideas of counting in fives, tens, and multiples of hundreds, tens, and ones, as well as number relationships involving these units, including comparing. Students understand multi-digit numbers (up to 1000) written in base-ten notation, recognizing that the digits in each place represent amounts of thousands, hundreds, tens, or ones (e.g., 853 is 8 hundreds + 5 tens + 3 ones).

(2) Students use their understanding of addition to develop fluency with addition and subtraction within 100. They solve problems within 1000 by applying their understanding of models for addition and subtraction, and they develop, discuss, and use efficient, accurate, and generalizable methods to compute sums and differences of whole numbers in base-ten notation, using their understanding of place value and the properties of operations. They select and accurately apply methods that are appropriate for the context and the numbers involved to mentally calculate sums and differences for numbers with only tens or only hundreds.

(3) Students recognize the need for standard units of measure (centimeter and inch) and they use rulers and other measurement tools with the understanding that linear measure involves an iteration of units. They recognize that the smaller the unit, the more iterations they need to cover a given length.

(4) Students describe and analyze shapes by examining their sides and angles. Students investigate, describe, and reason about decomposing and combining shapes to make other shapes. Through building, drawing, and analyzing two- and three-dimensional shapes, students develop a foundation for understanding area, volume, congruence, similarity, and symmetry in later grades.

The Mathematical Practice Standards complement the content standards at each grade level so that students increasingly engage with the subject matter as they grow in mathematical maturity and expertise.

Grade 2 Overview

Operations and Algebraic Thinking
- Represent and solve problems involving addition and subtraction.
- Add and subtract within 20.
- Work with equal groups of objects to gain foundations for multiplication.

Number and Operations in Base Ten
- Understand place value.
- Use place value understanding and properties of operations to add and subtract.

Measurement and Data
- Measure and estimate lengths in standard units.
- Relate addition and subtraction to length.
- Work with time and money.
- Represent and interpret data.

Geometry
- Reason with shapes and their attributes.

Mathematical Practices
1. Make sense of problems and persevere in solving them.
2. Reason abstractly and quantitatively.
3. Construct viable arguments and critique the reasoning of others.
4. Model with mathematics.
5. Use appropriate tools strategically.
6. Attend to precision.
7. Look for and make use of structure.
8. Look for and express regularity in repeated reasoning.

Operations and Algebraic Thinking 2.OA

Represent and solve problems involving addition and subtraction.

1. Use addition and subtraction within 100 to solve one- and two-step word problems involving situations of adding to, taking from, putting together, taking apart, and comparing, with unknowns in all positions, e.g., by using drawings and equations with a symbol for the unknown number to represent the problem.[8]

Add and subtract within 20.

2. Fluently add and subtract within 20 using mental strategies.[9] By end of Grade 2, know from memory all sums of two one-digit numbers.

    MA.2a. By the end of Grade 2, know from memory related subtraction facts of sums of two one-digit numbers.

Work with equal groups of objects to gain foundations for multiplication.

3. Determine whether a group of objects (up to 20) has an odd or even number of members, e.g., by pairing objects or counting them by 2s; write an equation to express an even number as a sum of two equal addends.
4. Use addition to find the total number of objects arranged in rectangular arrays with up to 5 rows and up to 5 columns; write an equation to express the total as a sum of equal addends.

Number and Operations in Base Ten 2.NBT

Understand place value.

1. Understand that the three digits of a three-digit number represent amounts of hundreds, tens, and ones; e.g., 706 equals 7 hundreds, 0 tens, and 6 ones. Understand the following as special cases:
    a. 100 can be thought of as a bundle of ten tens—called a "hundred."
    b. The numbers 100, 200, 300, 400, 500, 600, 700, 800, 900 refer to one, two, three, four, five, six, seven, eight, or nine hundreds (and 0 tens and 0 ones).
2. Count within 1000; skip-count by 5s, 10s, and 100s.
3. Read and write numbers to 1000 using base-ten numerals, number names, and expanded form.
4. Compare two three-digit numbers based on meanings of the hundreds, tens, and ones digits, using >, =, and < symbols to record the results of comparisons.

Use place value understanding and properties of operations to add and subtract.

5. Fluently add and subtract within 100 using strategies based on place value, properties of operations, and/or the relationship between addition and subtraction.
6. Add up to four two-digit numbers using strategies based on place value and properties of operations.
7. Add and subtract within 1000, using concrete models or drawings and strategies based on place value, properties of operations, and/or the relationship between addition and subtraction; relate the strategy to a written method. Understand that in adding or subtracting three-digit numbers, one adds or subtracts hundreds and hundreds, tens and tens, ones and ones; and sometimes it is necessary to compose or decompose tens or hundreds.
8. Mentally add 10 or 100 to a given number 100–900, and mentally subtract 10 or 100 from a given number 100–900.
9. Explain why addition and subtraction strategies work, using place value and the properties of operations.[10]

Measurement and Data 2.MD

Measure and estimate lengths in standard units.

1. Measure the length of an object by selecting and using appropriate tools such as rulers, yardsticks, meter sticks, and measuring tapes.
2. Measure the length of an object twice, using length units of different lengths for the two measurements; describe how the two measurements relate to the size of the unit chosen.

[8] See Glossary, Table 1.
[9] See standard 1.OA.6 for a list of mental strategies.
[10] Explanations may be supported by drawings or objects.

3. Estimate lengths using units of inches, feet, centimeters, and meters.
4. Measure to determine how much longer one object is than another, expressing the length difference in terms of a standard length unit.

Relate addition and subtraction to length.

5. Use addition and subtraction within 100 to solve word problems involving lengths that are given in the same units, e.g., by using drawings (such as drawings of rulers) and equations with a symbol for the unknown number to represent the problem.
6. Represent whole numbers as lengths from 0 on a number line diagram with equally spaced points corresponding to the numbers 0, 1, 2, …, and represent whole-number sums and differences within 100 on a number line diagram.

Work with time and money.

7. Tell and write time from analog and digital clocks to the nearest five minutes, using a.m. and p.m.
   MA.7a Know the relationships of time, including seconds in a minute, minutes in an hour, hours in a day, days in a week, month, or year; and weeks in a month or a year.
8. Solve word problems involving dollar bills, quarters, dimes, nickels, and pennies, using $ and ¢ symbols appropriately. *Example: If you have 2 dimes and 3 pennies, how many cents do you have?*

Represent and interpret data.

9. Generate measurement data by measuring lengths of several objects to the nearest whole unit, or by making repeated measurements of the same object. Show the measurements by making a line plot, where the horizontal scale is marked off in whole-number units.
10. Draw a picture graph and a bar graph (with single-unit scale) to represent a data set with up to four categories. Solve simple put-together, take-apart, and compare problems[11] using information presented in a bar graph.

Geometry 2.G

Reason with shapes and their attributes.

1. Recognize and draw shapes having specified attributes, such as a given number of angles or a given number of equal faces.[12] Identify triangles, quadrilaterals, pentagons, hexagons, and cubes.
2. Partition a rectangle into rows and columns of same-size squares and count to find the total number of them.
3. Partition circles and rectangles into two, three, or four equal shares, describe the shares using the words *halves, thirds, half of, a third of,* etc., and describe the whole as two halves, three thirds, four fourths. Recognize that equal shares of identical wholes need not have the same shape.

[11] See Glossary, Table 1.
[12] Sizes of lengths and angles are compared directly or visually, not compared by measuring.

Grade 3

In Grade 3, instructional time should focus on four critical areas: (1) developing understanding of multiplication and division and strategies for multiplication and division within 100; (2) developing understanding of fractions, especially unit fractions (fractions with numerator 1); (3) developing understanding of the structure of rectangular arrays and of area; and (4) describing and analyzing two-dimensional shapes.

(1) Students develop an understanding of the meanings of multiplication and division of whole numbers through activities and problems involving equal-sized groups, arrays, and area models; multiplication is finding an unknown product, and division is finding an unknown factor in these situations. For equal-sized group situations, division can require finding the unknown number of groups or the unknown group size. Students use properties of operations to calculate products of whole numbers, using increasingly sophisticated strategies based on these properties to solve multiplication and division problems involving single-digit factors. By comparing a variety of solution strategies, students learn the relationship between multiplication and division.

(2) Students develop an understanding of fractions, beginning with unit fractions. Students view fractions in general as being built out of unit fractions, and they use fractions along with visual fraction models to represent parts of a whole. Students understand that the size of a fractional part is relative to the size of the whole. For example, $^1/_2$ of the paint in a small bucket could be less paint than $^1/_3$ of the paint in a larger bucket, but $^1/_3$ of a ribbon is longer than $^1/_5$ of the same ribbon because when the ribbon is divided into 3 equal parts, the parts are longer than when the ribbon is divided into 5 equal parts. Students are able to use fractions to represent numbers equal to, less than, and greater than one. They solve problems that involve comparing fractions by using visual fraction models and strategies based on noticing equal numerators or denominators.

(3) Students recognize area as an attribute of two-dimensional regions. They measure the area of a shape by finding the total number of same-size units of area required to cover the shape without gaps or overlaps, a square with sides of unit length being the standard unit for measuring area. Students understand that rectangular arrays can be decomposed into identical rows or into identical columns. By decomposing rectangles into rectangular arrays of squares, students connect area to multiplication, and justify using multiplication to determine the area of a rectangle.

(4) Students describe, analyze, and compare properties of two-dimensional shapes. They compare and classify shapes by their sides and angles, and connect these with definitions of shapes. Students also relate their fraction work to geometry by expressing the area of part of a shape as a unit fraction of the whole.

The Mathematical Practice Standards complement the content standards at each grade level so that students increasingly engage with the subject matter as they grow in mathematical maturity and expertise.

Grade 3 Overview

Operations and Algebraic Thinking

- Represent and solve problems involving multiplication and division.
- Understand properties of multiplication and the
  relationship between multiplication and division.
- Multiply and divide within 100.
- Solve problems involving the four operations, and identify and explain patterns in arithmetic

Number and Operations in Base Ten

- Use place value understanding and properties of operations to perform multi-digit arithmetic

Number and Operations—Fractions

- Develop understanding of fractions as numbers.

- **Measurement and Data**
- Solve problems involving measurement and estimation of intervals of time, liquid volumes, and masses of objects.
- Represent and interpret data.
- Geometric measurement: understand concepts of area and relate area to multiplication and to addition.
- Geometric measurement: recognize perimeter as an attribute of plane figures and distinguish between linear and area measures.

Geometry

- Reason with shapes and their attributes.

Mathematical Practices

1. Make sense of problems and persevere in solving them.
2. Reason abstractly and quantitatively.
3. Construct viable arguments and critique the reasoning of others.
4. Model with mathematics.
5. Use appropriate tools strategically.
6. Attend to precision.
7. Look for and make use of structure.
8. Look for and express regularity in repeated reasoning.

Operations and Algebraic Thinking 3.OA

Represent and solve problems involving multiplication and division.

1. Interpret products of whole numbers, e.g., interpret 5×7 as the total number of objects in 5 groups of 7 objects each. *For example, describe a context in which a total number of objects can be expressed as* 5×7.
2. Interpret whole-number quotients of whole numbers, e.g., interpret $56 \div 8$ as the number of objects in each share when 56 objects are partitioned equally into 8 shares, or as a number of shares when 56 objects are partitioned into equal shares of 8 objects each. *For example, describe a context in which a number of shares or a number of groups can be expressed as* $56 \div 8$.
3. Use multiplication and division within 100 to solve word problems in situations involving equal groups, arrays, and measurement quantities, e.g., by using drawings and equations with a symbol for the unknown number to represent the problem.[13]
4. Determine the unknown whole number in a multiplication or division equation relating three whole numbers. *For example, determine the unknown number that makes the equation true in each of the equations* $8 \times ? = 48$, $5 = \square \div 3$, $6 \times 6 = ?$.

Understand properties of multiplication and the relationship between multiplication and division.

5. Apply properties of operations as strategies to multiply and divide.[14] *Examples: If* $6 \times 4 = 24$ *is known, then* $4 \times 6 = 24$ *is also known. (Commutative property of multiplication.)* $3 \times 5 \times 2$ *can be found by* $3 \times 5 = 15$*, then* $15 \times 2 = 30$*, or by* $5 \times 2 = 10$*, then* $3 \times 10 = 30$*. (Associative property of multiplication.) Knowing that* $8 \times 5 = 40$ *and* $8 \times 2 = 16$*, one can find* 8×7 *as* $8 \times (5 + 2) = (8 \times 5) + (8 \times 2) = 40 + 16 = 56$*. (Distributive property.)*
6. Understand division as an unknown-factor problem. *For example, find* $32 \div 8$ *by finding the number that makes 32 when multiplied by 8.*

Multiply and divide within 100.

7. Fluently multiply and divide within 100, using strategies such as the relationship between multiplication and division (e.g., knowing that $8 \times 5 = 40$, one knows $40 \div 5 = 8$) or properties of operations. By the end of Grade 3, know from memory all products of two one-digit numbers.

Solve problems involving the four operations, and identify and explain patterns in arithmetic.

8. Solve two-step word problems using the four operations. Represent these problems using equations with a letter standing for the unknown quantity. Assess the reasonableness of answers using mental computation and estimation strategies including rounding.[15]
9. Identify arithmetic patterns (including patterns in the addition table or multiplication table), and explain them using properties of operations. *For example, observe that 4 times a number is always even, and explain why 4 times a number can be decomposed into two equal addends.*

Number and Operations in Base Ten 3.NBT

Use place value understanding and properties of operations to perform multi-digit arithmetic.[16]

1. Use place value understanding to round whole numbers to the nearest 10 or 100.
2. Fluently add and subtract within 1000 using strategies and algorithms based on place value, properties of operations, and/or the relationship between addition and subtraction.
3. Multiply one-digit whole numbers by multiples of 10 in the range 10–90 (e.g., 9×80, 5×60) using strategies based on place value and properties of operations.

[13] See Glossary, Table 2.
[14] Students need not use formal terms for these properties.
[15] This standard is limited to problems posed with whole numbers and having whole-number answers; students should know how to perform operations in the conventional order when there are no parentheses to specify a particular order (Order of Operations).
[16] A range of algorithms may be used.

Number and Operations—Fractions[17] 3.NF

Develop understanding of fractions as numbers.

1. Understand a fraction $1/b$ as the quantity formed by 1 part when a whole is partitioned into b equal parts; understand a fraction a/b as the quantity formed by a parts of size $1/b$.
2. Understand a fraction as a number on the number line; represent fractions on a number line diagram.
   a. Represent a fraction $1/b$ on a number line diagram by defining the interval from 0 to 1 as the whole and partitioning it into b equal parts. Recognize that each part has size $1/b$ and that the endpoint of the part based at 0 locates the number $1/b$ on the number line.
   b. Represent a fraction a/b on a number line diagram by marking off a lengths $1/b$ from 0. Recognize that the resulting interval has size a/b and that its endpoint locates the number a/b on the number line.
3. Explain equivalence of fractions in special cases, and compare fractions by reasoning about their size.
   a. Understand two fractions as equivalent (equal) if they are the same size, or the same point on a number line.
   b. Recognize and generate simple equivalent fractions, e.g., $1/2 = 2/4$, $4/6 = 2/3$. Explain why the fractions are equivalent, e.g., by using a visual fraction model.
   c. Express whole numbers as fractions, and recognize fractions that are equivalent to whole numbers. *Examples: Express 3 in the form* $3 = 3/1$; *recognize that* $6/1 = 6$; *locate* $4/4$ *and 1 at the same point of a number line diagram.*
   d. Compare two fractions with the same numerator or the same denominator by reasoning about their size. Recognize that comparisons are valid only when the two fractions refer to the same whole. Record the results of comparisons with the symbols >, =, or <, and justify the conclusions, e.g., by using a visual fraction model.

Measurement and Data 3.MD

Solve problems involving measurement and estimation of intervals of time, liquid volumes, and masses of objects.

1. Tell and write time to the nearest minute and measure time intervals in minutes. Solve word problems involving addition and subtraction of time intervals in minutes, e.g., by representing the problem on a number line diagram.
2. Measure and estimate liquid volumes and masses of objects using standard units of grams (g), kilograms (kg), and liters (*l*).[18] Add, subtract, multiply, or divide to solve one-step word problems involving masses or volumes that are given in the same units, e.g., by using drawings (such as a beaker with a measurement scale) to represent the problem.[19]

Represent and interpret data.

3. Draw a scaled picture graph and a scaled bar graph to represent a data set with several categories. Solve one- and two-step "how many more" and "how many less" problems using information presented in scaled bar graphs. *For example, draw a bar graph in which each square in the bar graph might represent 5 pets.*
4. Generate measurement data by measuring lengths using rulers marked with halves and fourths of an inch. Show the data by making a line plot, where the horizontal scale is marked off in appropriate units—whole numbers, halves, or quarters.

Geometric measurement: understand concepts of area and relate area to multiplication and to addition.

5. Recognize area as an attribute of plane figures and understand concepts of area measurement.
   a. A square with side length 1 unit, called "a unit square," is said to have "one square unit" of area, and can be used to measure area.

---

[17] Grade 3 expectations in this domain are limited to fractions with denominators 2, 3, 4, 6, and 8.
[18] Excludes compound units such as cm^3 and finding the geometric volume of a container.
[19] Excludes multiplicative comparison problems (problems involving notions of "times as much"; see Glossary, Table 2).

   b. A plane figure which can be covered without gaps or overlaps by n unit squares is said to have an area of n square units.
6. Measure areas by counting unit squares (square cm, square m, square in, square ft, and improvised units).
7. Relate area to the operations of multiplication and addition.
   a. Find the area of a rectangle with whole-number side lengths by tiling it, and show that the area is the same as would be found by multiplying the side lengths.
   b. Multiply side lengths to find areas of rectangles with whole-number side lengths in the context of solving real world and mathematical problems, and represent whole-number products as rectangular areas in mathematical reasoning.
   c. Use tiling to show in a concrete case that the area of a rectangle with whole-number side lengths a and $b + c$ is the sum of $a \times b$ and $a \times c$. Use area models to represent the distributive property in mathematical reasoning.
   d. Recognize area as additive. Find areas of rectilinear figures by decomposing them into non-overlapping rectangles and adding the areas of the non-overlapping parts, applying this technique to solve real world problems.

Geometric measurement: recognize perimeter as an attribute of plane figures and distinguish between linear and area measures.

8. Solve real world and mathematical problems involving perimeters of polygons, including finding the perimeter given the side lengths, finding an unknown side length, and exhibiting rectangles with the same perimeter and different areas or with the same area and different perimeters.

Geometry 3.G

Reason with shapes and their attributes.

1. Understand that shapes in different categories (e.g., rhombuses, rectangles, and others) may share attributes (e.g., having four sides), and that the shared attributes can define a larger category (e.g., quadrilaterals). Recognize rhombuses, rectangles, and squares as examples of quadrilaterals, and draw examples of quadrilaterals that do not belong to any of these subcategories.
2. Partition shapes into parts with equal areas. Express the area of each part as a unit fraction of the whole. *For example, partition a shape into 4 parts with equal area, and describe the area of each part as* $^1/_4$ *of the area of the shape.*

Grade 4

In Grade 4, instructional time should focus on three critical areas: (1) developing understanding and fluency with multi-digit multiplication, and developing understanding of dividing to find quotients involving multi-digit dividends; (2) developing an understanding of fraction equivalence, addition and subtraction of fractions with like denominators, and multiplication of fractions by whole numbers; (3) understanding that geometric figures can be analyzed and classified based on their properties, such as having parallel sides, perpendicular sides, particular angle measures, and symmetry.

(1) Students generalize their understanding of place value to 1,000,000, understanding the relative sizes of numbers in each place. They apply their understanding of models for multiplication (equal-sized groups, arrays, area models), place value, and properties of operations, in particular the distributive property, as they develop, discuss, and use efficient, accurate, and generalizable methods to compute products of multi-digit whole numbers. Depending on the numbers and the context, they select and accurately apply appropriate methods to estimate or mentally calculate products. They develop fluency with efficient procedures for multiplying whole numbers; understand and explain why the procedures work based on place value and properties of operations; and use them to solve problems. Students apply their understanding of models for division, place value, properties of operations, and the relationship of division to multiplication as they develop, discuss, and use efficient, accurate, and generalizable procedures to find quotients involving multi-digit dividends. They select and accurately apply appropriate methods to estimate and mentally calculate quotients, and interpret remainders based upon the context.

(2) Students develop understanding of fraction equivalence and operations with fractions. They recognize that two different fractions can be equal (e.g., $^{15}/_{9} = {}^{5}/_{3}$), and they develop methods for generating and recognizing equivalent fractions. Students extend previous understandings about how fractions are built from unit fractions, composing fractions from unit fractions, decomposing fractions into unit fractions, and using the meaning of fractions and the meaning of multiplication to multiply a fraction by a whole number.

(3) Students describe, analyze, compare, and classify two-dimensional shapes. Through building, drawing, and analyzing two-dimensional shapes, students deepen their understanding of properties of two-dimensional objects and the use of them to solve problems involving symmetry.

The Mathematical Practice Standards complement the content standards at each grade level so that students increasingly engage with the subject matter as they grow in mathematical maturity and expertise.

Grade 4 Overview

Operations and Algebraic Thinking

- Use the four operations with whole numbers
  to solve problems.
- Gain familiarity with factors and multiples.
- Generate and analyze patterns.

Number and Operations in Base Ten

- Generalize place value understanding for multi-digit whole numbers.
- Use place value understanding and properties
  of operations to perform multi-digit arithmetic

Number and Operations—Fractions

- Extend understanding of fraction equivalence and ordering.
- Build fractions from unit fractions by applying and extending previous understandings of operations on whole numbers.
- Understand decimal notation for fractions, and compare decimal fractions.

Measurement and Data

- Solve problems involving measurement and conversion of measurements from a larger unit to a smaller unit.
- Represent and interpret data.
- Geometric measurement: Understand concepts of angle and measure angles.

Geometry

- Draw and identify lines and angles, and classify shapes by properties of their lines and angles.

Mathematical Practices

1. Make sense of problems and persevere in solving them.
2. Reason abstractly and quantitatively.
3. Construct viable arguments and critique the reasoning of others.
4. Model with mathematics.
5. Use appropriate tools strategically.
6. Attend to precision.
7. Look for and make use of structure.
8. Look for and express regularity in repeated reasoning.

Operations and Algebraic Thinking 4.OA

Use the four operations with whole numbers to solve problems.

1. Interpret a multiplication equation as a comparison, e.g., interpret $35 = 5 \times 7$ as a statement that 35 is 5 times as many as 7 and 7 times as many as 5. Represent verbal statements of multiplicative comparisons as multiplication equations.
2. Multiply or divide to solve word problems involving multiplicative comparison, e.g., by using drawings and equations with a symbol for the unknown number to represent the problem, distinguishing multiplicative comparison from additive comparison.[20]
3. Solve multistep word problems posed with whole numbers and having whole-number answers using the four operations, including problems in which remainders must be interpreted. Represent these problems using equations with a letter standing for the unknown quantity. Assess the reasonableness of answers using mental computation and estimation strategies including rounding.

Gain familiarity with factors and multiples.

4. Find all factor pairs for a whole number in the range 1–100. Recognize that a whole number is a multiple of each of its factors. Determine whether a given whole number in the range 1–100 is a multiple of a given one-digit number. Determine whether a given whole number in the range 1–100 is prime or composite.

Generate and analyze patterns.

5. Generate a number or shape pattern that follows a given rule. Identify apparent features of the pattern that were not explicit in the rule itself. *For example, given the rule "Add 3" and the starting number 1, generate terms in the resulting sequence and observe that the terms appear to alternate between odd and even numbers. Explain informally why the numbers will continue to alternate in this way.*

Number and Operations in Base Ten[21] 4.NBT

Generalize place value understanding for multi-digit whole numbers.

1. Recognize that in a multi-digit whole number, a digit in one place represents ten times what it represents in the place to its right. *For example, recognize that $700 \div 70 = 10$ by applying concepts of place value and division*
2. Read and write multi-digit whole numbers using base-ten numerals, number names, and expanded form. Compare two multi-digit numbers based on meanings of the digits in each place, using >, =, and < symbols to record the results of comparisons.
3. Use place value understanding to round multi-digit whole numbers to any place.

Use place value understanding and properties of operations to perform multi-digit arithmetic.

4. Fluently add and subtract multi-digit whole numbers using the standard algorithm.
5. Multiply a whole number of up to four digits by a one-digit whole number, and multiply two two-digit numbers, using strategies based on place value and the properties of operations. Illustrate and explain the calculation by using equations, rectangular arrays, and/or area models.
   MA.5a. Know multiplication facts and related division facts through 12 x 12.

Find whole-number quotients and remainders with up to four-digit dividends and one-digit divisors, using strategies based on place value, the properties of operations, and/or the relationship between multiplication and division. Illustrate and explain the calculation by using equations, rectangular arrays, and/or area models.

Number and Operations—Fractions[22] 4.NF

Extend understanding of fraction equivalence and ordering.

1. Explain why a fraction a/b is equivalent to a fraction $(n \times a)/(n \times b)$ by using visual fraction models, with attention to how the number and size of the parts differ even though the two fractions themselves are the same size. Use this principle to recognize and generate equivalent fractions.

[20] See Glossary, Table 2.
[21] Grade 4 expectations in this domain are limited to whole numbers less than or equal to 1,000,000.
[22] Grade 4 expectations in this domain are limited to fractions with denominators 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 8, 10, 12, and 100.

2. Compare two fractions with different numerators and different denominators, e.g., by creating common denominators or numerators, or by comparing to a benchmark fraction such as $1/2$. Recognize that comparisons are valid only when the two fractions refer to the same whole. Record the results of comparisons with symbols >, =, or <, and justify the conclusions, e.g., by using a visual fraction model.

Build fractions from unit fractions by applying and extending previous understandings of operations on whole numbers.

3. Understand a fraction a/b with $a > 1$ as a sum of fractions $1/b$.
   a. Understand addition and subtraction of fractions as joining and separating parts referring to the same whole.
   b. Decompose a fraction into a sum of fractions with the same denominator in more than one way, recording each decomposition by an equation. Justify decompositions, e.g., by using a visual fraction model. *Examples:* $3/8 = 1/8 + 1/8 + 1/8$; $3/8 = 1/8 + 2/8$; $2\ 1/8 = 1 + 1 + 1/8 = 8/8 + 8/8 + 1/8$.
   c. Add and subtract mixed numbers with like denominators, e.g., by replacing each mixed number with an equivalent fraction, and/or by using properties of operations and the relationship between addition and subtraction.
   d. Solve word problems involving addition and subtraction of fractions referring to the same whole and having like denominators, e.g., by using visual fraction models and equations to represent the problem.
4. Apply and extend previous understandings of multiplication to multiply a fraction by a whole number.
   a. Understand a fraction a/b as a multiple of $1/b$. *For example, use a visual fraction model to represent* $5/4$ *as the product* $5 \times (1/4)$, *recording the conclusion by the equation* $5/4 = 5 \times (1/4)$.
   b. Understand a multiple of a/b as a multiple of $1/b$, and use this understanding to multiply a fraction by a whole number. *For example, use a visual fraction model to express* $3 \times (2/5)$ as $6 \times (1/5)$, *recognizing this product as* $6/5$. (*In general,* $n \times (a/b) = (n \times a)/b$.)
   c. Solve word problems involving multiplication of a fraction by a whole number, e.g., by using visual fraction models and equations to represent the problem. *For example, if each person at a party will eat* $3/8$ *of a pound of roast beef, and there will be 5 people at the party, how many pounds of roast beef will be needed? Between what two whole numbers does your answer lie?*

Understand decimal notation for fractions, and compare decimal fractions.

5. Express a fraction with denominator 10 as an equivalent fraction with denominator 100, and use this technique to add two fractions with respective denominators 10 and 100.[23] *For example, express* $3/10$ *as* $30/100$, *and add* $3/10 + 4/100 = 34/100$.
6. Use decimal notation for fractions with denominators 10 or 100. *For example, rewrite 0.62 as* $62/100$; *describe a length as 0.62 meters; locate 0.62 on a number line diagram.*
7. Compare two decimals to hundredths by reasoning about their size. Recognize that comparisons are valid only when the two decimals refer to the same whole. Record the results of comparisons with the symbols >, =, or <, and justify the conclusions, e.g., by using a visual model.

Measurement and Data 4.MD

Solve problems involving measurement and conversion of measurements from a larger unit to a smaller unit.

1. Know relative sizes of measurement units within one system of units including km, m, cm; kg, g; lb, oz.; l, ml; hr, min, sec. Within a single system of measurement, express measurements in a larger unit in terms of a smaller unit. Record measurement equivalents in a two-column table. *For example, know that 1 ft is 12 times as long as 1 in. Express the length of a 4 ft snake as 48 in. Generate a conversion table for feet and inches listing the number pairs* (*1, 12*), (*2, 24*), (*3, 36*), *…*

[23] Students who can generate equivalent fractions can develop strategies for adding fractions with unlike denominators in general. But addition and subtraction with unlike denominators in general is not a requirement at this grade.

2. Use the four operations to solve word problems involving distances, intervals of time, liquid volumes, masses of objects, and money, including problems involving simple fractions or decimals, and problems that require expressing measurements given in a larger unit in terms of a smaller unit. Represent measurement quantities using diagrams such as number line diagrams that feature a measurement scale.
3. Apply the area and perimeter formulas for rectangles in real world and mathematical problems. *For example, find the width of a rectangular room given the area of the flooring and the length, by viewing the area formula as a multiplication equation with an unknown factor.*

Represent and interpret data.

4. Make a line plot to display a data set of measurements in fractions of a unit ($^1/_2$, $^1/_4$, $^1/_8$). Solve problems involving addition and subtraction of fractions by using information presented in line plots. *For example, from a line plot find and interpret the difference in length between the longest and shortest specimens in an insect collection.*

Geometric measurement: understand concepts of angle and measure angles.

5. Recognize angles as geometric shapes that are formed wherever two rays share a common endpoint, and understand concepts of angle measurement:
   a. An angle is measured with reference to a circle with its center at the common endpoint of the rays, by considering the fraction of the circular arc between the points where the two rays intersect the circle. An angle that turns through $^1/_{360}$ of a circle is called a "one-degree angle," and can be used to measure angles.
   b. An angle that turns through *n* one-degree angles is said to have an angle measure of *n* degrees.
6. Measure angles in whole-number degrees using a protractor. Sketch angles of specified measure.
7. Recognize angle measure as additive. When an angle is decomposed into non-overlapping parts, the angle measure of the whole is the sum of the angle measures of the parts. Solve addition and subtraction problems to find unknown angles on a diagram in real world and mathematical problems, e.g., by using an equation with a symbol for the unknown angle measure.

Geometry 4.G

Draw and identify lines and angles, and classify shapes by properties of their lines and angles.

1. Draw points, lines, line segments, rays, angles (right, acute, obtuse), and perpendicular and parallel lines. Identify these in two-dimensional figures.
2. Classify two-dimensional figures based on the presence or absence of parallel or perpendicular lines, or the presence or absence of angles of a specified size. Recognize right triangles as a category, and identify right triangles.
3. Recognize a line of symmetry for a two-dimensional figure as a line across the figure such that the figure can be folded along the line into matching parts. Identify line-symmetric figures and draw lines of symmetry.

Grade 5

In Grade 5, instructional time should focus on three critical areas: (1) developing fluency with addition and subtraction of fractions, and developing understanding of the multiplication of fractions and of division of fractions in limited cases (unit fractions divided by whole numbers and whole numbers divided by unit fractions); (2) extending division to 2-digit divisors, integrating decimal fractions into the place value system and developing understanding of operations with decimals to hundredths, and developing fluency with whole number and decimal operations; and (3) developing understanding of volume.

(1) Students apply their understanding of fractions and fraction models to represent the addition and subtraction of fractions with unlike denominators as equivalent calculations with like denominators. They develop fluency in calculating sums and differences of fractions, and make reasonable estimates of them. Students also use the meaning of fractions, of multiplication and division, and the relationship between multiplication and division to understand and explain why the procedures for multiplying and dividing fractions make sense. (Note: this is limited to the case of dividing unit fractions by whole numbers and whole numbers by unit fractions.)

(2) Students develop understanding of why division procedures work based on the meaning of base-ten numerals and properties of operations. They finalize fluency with multi-digit addition, subtraction, multiplication, and division. They apply their understandings of models for decimals, decimal notation, and properties of operations to add and subtract decimals to hundredths. They develop fluency in these computations, and make reasonable estimates of their results. Students use the relationship between decimals and fractions, as well as the relationship between finite decimals and whole numbers (i.e., a finite decimal multiplied by an appropriate power of 10 is a whole number), to understand and explain why the procedures for multiplying and dividing finite decimals make sense. They compute products and quotients of decimals to hundredths efficiently and accurately.

(3) Students recognize volume as an attribute of three-dimensional space. They understand that volume can be measured by finding the total number of same-size units of volume required to fill the space without gaps or overlaps. They understand that a 1-unit by 1-unit by 1-unit cube is the standard unit for measuring volume. They select appropriate units, strategies, and tools for solving problems that involve estimating and measuring volume. They decompose three-dimensional shapes and find volumes of right rectangular prisms by viewing them as decomposed into layers of arrays of cubes. They measure necessary attributes of shapes in order to determine volumes to solve real world and mathematical problems.

The Mathematical Practice Standards complement the content standards at each grade level so that students increasingly engage with the subject matter as they grow in mathematical maturity and expertise.

Grade 5 Overview

Operations and Algebraic Thinking
- Write and interpret numerical expressions.
- Analyze patterns and relationships.

Number and Operations in Base Ten
- Understand the place value system.
- Perform operations with multi-digit whole numbers and with decimals to hundredths.

Number and Operations—Fractions
- Use equivalent fractions as a strategy to add and subtract fractions.
- Apply and extend previous understandings of multiplication and division to multiply and divide fractions.

The Number System
- Gain familiarity with concepts of positive and negative integers.

Measurement and Data
- Convert like measurement units within a given measurement system.
- Represent and interpret data.
- Geometric measurement: Understand concepts of volume and relate volume to multiplication and to addition.

Geometry
- Graph points on the coordinate plane to solve real world and mathematical problems.
- Classify two-dimensional figures into categories based on their properties.

Mathematical Practices

1. Make sense of problems and persevere in solving them.
2. Reason abstractly and quantitatively.
3. Construct viable arguments and critique the reasoning of others.
4. Model with mathematics.
5. Use appropriate tools strategically.
6. Attend to precision.
7. Look for and make use of structure.
8. Look for and express regularity in repeated reasoning.

Operations and Algebraic Thinking 5.OA

Write and interpret numerical expressions.

1. Use parentheses, brackets, or braces in numerical expressions, and evaluate expressions with these symbols.
2. Write simple expressions that record calculations with numbers, and interpret numerical expressions without evaluating them. *For example, express the calculation "add 8 and 7, then multiply by 2" as* $2 \times (8 + 7)$*. Recognize that* $3 \times (18932 + 921)$ *is three times as large as 18932 + 921, without having to calculate the indicated sum or product.*

Analyze patterns and relationships.

3. Generate two numerical patterns using two given rules. Identify apparent relationships between corresponding terms. Form ordered pairs consisting of corresponding terms from the two patterns, and graph the ordered pairs on a coordinate plane. *For example, given the rule "Add 3" and the starting number 0, and given the rule "Add 6" and the starting number 0, generate terms in the resulting sequences, and observe that the terms in one sequence are twice the corresponding terms in the other sequence. Explain informally why this is so.*

Number and Operations in Base Ten 5.NBT

Understand the place value system.

1. Recognize that in a multi-digit number, a digit in one place represents 10 times as much as it represents in the place to its right and $^1/_{10}$ of what it represents in the place to its left.
2. Explain patterns in the number of zeros of the product when multiplying a number by powers of 10, and explain patterns in the placement of the decimal point when a decimal is multiplied or divided by a power of 10. Use whole-number exponents to denote powers of 10.
3. Read, write, and compare decimals to thousandths.
   a. Read and write decimals to thousandths using base-ten numerals, number names, and expanded form, e.g., $347.392 = 3 \times 100 + 4 \times 10 + 7 \times 1 + 3 \times (^1/_{10}) + 9 \times (^1/_{100}) + 2 \times (^1/_{1000})$.
   b. Compare two decimals to thousandths based on meanings of the digits in each place, using >, =, and < symbols to record the results of comparisons.
4. Use place value understanding to round decimals to any place.

Perform operations with multi-digit whole numbers and with decimals to hundredths.

5. Fluently multiply multi-digit whole numbers using the standard algorithm.
6. Find whole-number quotients of whole numbers with up to four-digit dividends and two-digit divisors, using strategies based on place value, the properties of operations, and/or the relationship between multiplication and division. Illustrate and explain the calculation by using equations, rectangular arrays, and/or area models.
7. Add, subtract, multiply, and divide decimals to hundredths, using concrete models or drawings and strategies based on place value, properties of operations, and/or the relationship between addition and subtraction; relate the strategy to a written method and explain the reasoning used.

Number and Operations—Fractions 5.NF

Use equivalent fractions as a strategy to add and subtract fractions.

1. Add and subtract fractions with unlike denominators (including mixed numbers) by replacing given fractions with equivalent fractions in such a way as to produce an equivalent sum or difference of fractions with like denominators. *For example,* $^2/_3 + {^5/_4} = {^8/_{12}} + {^{15}/_{12}} = {^{23}/_{12}}$*. (In general,* $^a/_b + {^c/_d} = {^{(ad + bc)}/_{bd}}$*.)*
2. Solve word problems involving addition and subtraction of fractions referring to the same whole, including cases of unlike denominators, e.g., by using visual fraction models or equations to represent the problem. Use benchmark fractions and number sense of fractions to estimate mentally and assess

the reasonableness of answers. *For example, recognize an incorrect result* $^2/_5 + {}^1/_2 = {}^3/_7$*, by observing that* $^3/_7 < {}^1/_2$.

Apply and extend previous understandings of multiplication and division to multiply and divide fractions.

3. Interpret a fraction as division of the numerator by the denominator ($^a/_b = a \div b$). Solve word problems involving division of whole numbers leading to answers in the form of fractions or mixed numbers, e.g., by using visual fraction models or equations to represent the problem. *For example, interpret* $^3/_4$ *as the result of dividing 3 by 4, noting that* $^3/_4$ *multiplied by 4 equals 3, and that when 3 wholes are shared equally among 4 people each person has a share of size* $^3/_4$*. If 9 people want to share a 50-pound sack of rice equally by weight, how many pounds of rice should each person get? Between what two whole numbers does your answer lie?*
4. Apply and extend previous understandings of multiplication to multiply a fraction or whole number by a fraction.
   a. Interpret the product $(^a/_b) \times q$ as a parts of a partition of q into b equal parts; equivalently, as the result of a sequence of operations $a \times q \div b$. *For example, use a visual fraction model to show* $(^2/_3) \times 4 = {}^8/_3$*, and create a story context for this equation. Do the same with* $(^2/_3) \times (^4/_5) = {}^8/_{15}$*. (In general,* $(^a/_b) \times (^c/_d) = {}^{ac}/_{bd}$*.)*
   b. Find the area of a rectangle with fractional side lengths by tiling it with unit squares of the appropriate unit fraction side lengths, and show that the area is the same as would be found by multiplying the side lengths. Multiply fractional side lengths to find areas of rectangles, and represent fraction products as rectangular areas.
5. Interpret multiplication as scaling (resizing), by:
   a. Comparing the size of a product to the size of one factor on the basis of the size of the other factor, without performing the indicated multiplication.
   b. Explaining why multiplying a given number by a fraction greater than 1 results in a product greater than the given number (recognizing multiplication by whole numbers greater than 1 as a familiar case); explaining why multiplying a given number by a fraction less than 1 results in a product smaller than the given number; and relating the principle of fraction equivalence $^a/_b = {}^{(n\times a)}/_{(n\times b)}$ to the effect of multiplying $^a/_b$ by 1.
6. Solve real world problems involving multiplication of fractions and mixed numbers, e.g., by using visual fraction models or equations to represent the problem.
7. Apply and extend previous understandings of division to divide unit fractions by whole numbers and whole numbers by unit fractions.[24]
   a. Interpret division of a unit fraction by a non-zero whole number, and compute such quotients. *For example, create a story context for* $(^1/_3) \div 4$*, and use a visual fraction model to show the quotient. Use the relationship between multiplication and division to explain that* $(^1/_3) \div 4 = {}^1/_{12}$ *because* $(^1/_{12}) \times 4 = {}^1/_3$*.*
   b. Interpret division of a whole number by a unit fraction, and compute such quotients. *For example, create a story context for* $4 \div (^1/_5)$*, and use a visual fraction model to show the quotient. Use the relationship between multiplication and division to explain that* $4 \div (^1/_5) = 20$ *because* $20 \times (^1/_5) = 4$*.*
   c. Solve real world problems involving division of unit fractions by non-zero whole numbers and division of whole numbers by unit fractions, e.g., by using visual fraction models and equations to

[24] Students able to multiply fractions in general can develop strategies to divide fractions in general, by reasoning about the relationship between multiplication and division. But division of a fraction by a fraction is not a requirement at this grade.

represent the problem. *For example, how much chocolate will each person get if 3 people share $1/2$ lb of chocolate equally? How many $1/3$-cup servings are in 2 cups of raisins?*

The Number System 5.NS

Gain familiarity with concepts of positive and negative integers.

MA.1 Use positive and negative integers to describe quantities such as temperature above/below zero, elevation above/below sea level, or credit/debit.

Measurement and Data 5.MD

Convert like measurement units within a given measurement system.

1. Convert among different-sized standard measurement units within a given measurement system (e.g., convert 5 cm to 0.05 m), and use these conversions in solving multi-step, real world problems.

Represent and interpret data.

2. Make a line plot to display a data set of measurements in fractions of a unit ($1/2$, $1/4$, $1/8$). Use operations on fractions for this grade to solve problems involving information presented in line plots. *For example, given different measurements of liquid in identical beakers, find the amount of liquid each beaker would contain if the total amount in all the beakers were redistributed equally.*

Geometric measurement: understand concepts of volume and relate volume to multiplication and to addition.

3. Recognize volume as an attribute of solid figures and understand concepts of volume measurement.
   a. A cube with side length 1 unit, called a "unit cube," is said to have "one cubic unit" of volume, and can be used to measure volume.
   b. A solid figure which can be packed without gaps or overlaps using *n* unit cubes is said to have a volume of *n* cubic units.
4. Measure volumes by counting unit cubes, using cubic cm, cubic in, cubic ft, and improvised units.
5. Relate volume to the operations of multiplication and addition and solve real world and mathematical problems involving volume.
   a. Find the volume of a right rectangular prism with whole-number side lengths by packing it with unit cubes, and show that the volume is the same as would be found by multiplying the edge lengths, equivalently by multiplying the height by the area of the base. Represent threefold whole-number products as volumes, e.g., to represent the associative property of multiplication.
   b. Apply the formulas $V = l \times w \times h$ and $V = b \times h$ for rectangular prisms to find volumes of right rectangular prisms with whole-number edge lengths in the context of solving real world and mathematical problems.
   c. Recognize volume as additive. Find volumes of solid figures composed of two non-overlapping right rectangular prisms by adding the volumes of the non-overlapping parts, applying this technique to solve real world problems.

Geometry 5.G

Graph points on the coordinate plane to solve real-world and mathematical problems.

1. Use a pair of perpendicular number lines, called axes, to define a coordinate system, with the intersection of the lines (the origin) arranged to coincide with the 0 on each line and a given point in the plane located by using an ordered pair of numbers, called its coordinates. Understand that the first number indicates how far to travel from the origin in the direction of one axis, and the second number indicates how far to travel in the direction of the second axis, with the convention that the names of the two axes and the coordinates correspond (e.g., *x*-axis and *x*-coordinate, *y*-axis and *y*-coordinate).
2. Represent real world and mathematical problems by graphing points in the first quadrant of the coordinate plane, and interpret coordinate values of points in the context of the situation.

Classify two-dimensional figures into categories based on their properties.

3. Understand that attributes belonging to a category of two-dimensional figures also belong to all subcategories of that category. *For example, all rectangles have four right angles and squares are rectangles, so all squares have four right angles.*
4. Classify two-dimensional figures in a hierarchy based on properties.

Grade 6

In Grade 6, instructional time should focus on four critical areas: (1) connecting ratio and rate to whole number multiplication and division and using concepts of ratio and rate to solve problems; (2) completing understanding of division of fractions and extending the notion of number to the system of rational numbers, which includes negative numbers; (3) writing, interpreting, and using expressions and equations; and (4) developing understanding of statistical thinking.

(1) Students use reasoning about multiplication and division to solve ratio and rate problems about quantities. By viewing equivalent ratios and rates as deriving from, and extending, pairs of rows (or columns) in the multiplication table, and by analyzing simple drawings that indicate the relative size of quantities, students connect their understanding of multiplication and division with ratios and rates. Thus students expand the scope of problems for which they can use multiplication and division to solve problems, and they connect ratios and fractions. Students solve a wide variety of problems involving ratios and rates.

(2) Students use the meaning of fractions, the meanings of multiplication and division, and the relationship between multiplication and division to understand and explain why the procedures for dividing fractions make sense. Students use these operations to solve problems. Students extend their previous understandings of number and the ordering of numbers to the full system of rational numbers, which includes negative rational numbers, and in particular negative integers. They reason about the order and absolute value of rational numbers and about the location of points in all four quadrants of the coordinate plane.

(3) Students understand the use of variables in mathematical expressions. They write expressions and equations that correspond to given situations, evaluate expressions, and use expressions and formulas to solve problems. Students understand that expressions in different forms can be equivalent, and they use the properties of operations to rewrite expressions in equivalent forms. Students know that the solutions of an equation are the values of the variables that make the equation true. Students use properties of operations and the idea of maintaining the equality of both sides of an equation to solve simple one-step equations. Students construct and analyze tables, such as tables of quantities that are in equivalent ratios, and they use equations (such as $3x = y$) to describe relationships between quantities.

(4) Building on and reinforcing their understanding of number, students begin to develop their ability to think statistically. Students recognize that a data distribution may not have a definite center and that different ways to measure center yield different values. The median measures center in the sense that it is roughly the middle value. The mean measures center in the sense that it is the value that each data point would take on if the total of the data values were redistributed equally, and also in the sense that it is a balance point. Students recognize that a measure of variability (interquartile range or mean absolute deviation) can also be useful for summarizing data because two very different sets of data can have the same mean and median yet be distinguished by their variability. Students learn to describe and summarize numerical data sets, identifying clusters, peaks, gaps, and symmetry, considering the context in which the data were collected.

Students in Grade 6 also build on their work with area in elementary school by reasoning about relationships among shapes to determine area, surface area, and volume. They find areas of right triangles, other triangles, and special quadrilaterals by decomposing these shapes, rearranging or removing pieces, and relating the shapes to rectangles. Using these methods, students discuss, develop, and justify formulas for areas of triangles and parallelograms. Students find areas of polygons and surface areas of prisms and pyramids by decomposing them into pieces whose area they can determine. They reason about right rectangular prisms with fractional side lengths to extend formulas for the volume of a right rectangular prism to fractional side lengths. They prepare for work on scale drawings and constructions in Grade 7 by drawing polygons in the coordinate plane.

The Mathematical Practice Standards complement the content standards at each grade level so that students increasingly engage with the subject matter as they grow in mathematical maturity and expertise.

Grade 6 Overview

Ratios and Proportional Relationships

- Understand ratio concepts and use ratio reasoning to solve problems

The Number System

- Apply and extend previous understandings of multiplication and division to divide fractions by fractions.
- Compute fluently with multi-digit numbers and find common factors and multiples.
- Apply and extend previous understandings of numbers to the system of rational numbers.

Expressions and Equations

- Apply and extend previous understandings of arithmetic to algebraic expressions.
- Reason about and solve one-variable equations and inequalities.
- Represent and analyze quantitative relationships between dependent and independent variables.

Geometry

- Solve real-world and mathematical problems involving area, surface area, and volume.

Statistics and Probability

- Develop understanding of statistical variability.
- Summarize and describe distributions.

Mathematical Practices

1. Make sense of problems and persevere in solving them.
2. Reason abstractly and quantitatively.
3. Construct viable arguments and critique the reasoning of others.
4. Model with mathematics.
5. Use appropriate tools strategically.
6. Attend to precision.
7. Look for and make use of structure.
8. Look for and express regularity in repeated reasoning.

Ratios and Proportional Relationships 6.RP

Understand ratio concepts and use ratio reasoning to solve problems.

1. Understand the concept of a ratio and use ratio language to describe a ratio relationship between two quantities. *For example, "The ratio of wings to beaks in the bird house at the zoo was 2:1, because for every 2 wings there was 1 beak." "For every vote candidate A received, candidate C received nearly three votes."*
2. Understand the concept of a unit rate a/b associated with a ratio $a:b$ with $b \neq 0$, and use rate language in the context of a ratio relationship. *For example, "This recipe has a ratio of 3 cups of flour to 4 cups of sugar, so there is $3/4$ cup of flour for each cup of sugar." "We paid \$75 for 15 hamburgers, which is a rate of \$5 per hamburger."* [25]
3. Use ratio and rate reasoning to solve real-world and mathematical problems, e.g., by reasoning about tables of equivalent ratios, tape diagrams, double number line diagrams, or equations.
   a. Make tables of equivalent ratios relating quantities with whole-number measurements, find missing values in the tables, and plot the pairs of values on the coordinate plane. Use tables to compare ratios.
   b. Solve unit rate problems including those involving unit pricing and constant speed. *For example, if it took 7 hours to mow 4 lawns, then at that rate, how many lawns could be mowed in 35 hours? At what rate were lawns being mowed?*
   c. Find a percent of a quantity as a rate per 100 (e.g., 30% of a quantity means $30/100$ times the quantity); solve problems involving finding the whole, given a part and the percent.
   d. Use ratio reasoning to convert measurement units; manipulate and transform units appropriately when multiplying or dividing quantities.
   <u>MA.3e. Solve problems that relate the mass of an object to its volume.</u>

The Number System 6.NS

Apply and extend previous understandings of multiplication and division to divide fractions by fractions.

1. Interpret and compute quotients of fractions, and solve word problems involving division of fractions by fractions, e.g., by using visual fraction models and equations to represent the problem. *For example, create a story context for $(2/3) \div (3/4)$ and use a visual fraction model to show the quotient; use the relationship between multiplication and division to explain that $(2/3) \div (3/4) = 8/9$ because $3/4$ of $8/9$ is $2/3$. (In general, $(a/b) \div (c/d) = ad/bc$.) How much chocolate will each person get if 3 people share $1/2$ lb of chocolate equally? How many $3/4$-cup servings are in $2/3$ of a cup of yogurt? How wide is a rectangular strip of land with length $3/4$ mi and area $1/2$ square mi?*

Compute fluently with multi-digit numbers and find common factors and multiples.

2. Fluently divide multi-digit numbers using the standard algorithm.
3. Fluently add, subtract, multiply, and divide multi-digit decimals using the standard algorithm for each operation.
4. Find the greatest common factor of two whole numbers less than or equal to 100 and the least common multiple of two whole numbers less than or equal to 12. Use the distributive property to express a sum of two whole numbers 1–100 with a common factor as a multiple of a sum of two whole numbers with no common factor. *For example, express 36 + 8 as 4 (9 + 2).*
   <u>MA.4a. Apply number theory concepts, including prime factorization and relatively prime numbers, to the solution of problems.</u>

Apply and extend previous understandings of numbers to the system of rational numbers.

5. Understand that positive and negative numbers are used together to describe quantities having opposite directions or values (e.g., temperature above/below zero, elevation above/below sea level,

[25] Expectations for unit rates in this grade are limited to non-complex fractions.

credits/debits, positive/negative electric charge); use positive and negative numbers to represent quantities in real-world contexts, explaining the meaning of 0 in each situation.

6. Understand a rational number as a point on the number line. Extend number line diagrams and coordinate axes familiar from previous grades to represent points on the line and in the plane with negative number coordinates.
   a. Recognize opposite signs of numbers as indicating locations on opposite sides of 0 on the number line; recognize that the opposite of the opposite of a number is the number itself, e.g., –(–3) = 3, and that 0 is its own opposite.
   b. Understand signs of numbers in ordered pairs as indicating locations in quadrants of the coordinate plane; recognize that when two ordered pairs differ only by signs, the locations of the points are related by reflections across one or both axes.
   c. Find and position integers and other rational numbers on a horizontal or vertical number line diagram; find and position pairs of integers and other rational numbers on a coordinate plane.
7. Understand ordering and absolute value of rational numbers.
   a. Interpret statements of inequality as statements about the relative position of two numbers on a number line diagram. *For example, interpret –3 > –7 as a statement that –3 is located to the right of –7 on a number line oriented from left to right.*
   b. Write, interpret, and explain statements of order for rational numbers in real-world contexts. *For example, write –3 ^{o}C > –7 ^{o}C to express the fact that –3 ^{o}C is warmer than –7 ^{o}C.*
   c. Understand the absolute value of a rational number as its distance from 0 on the number line; interpret absolute value as magnitude for a positive or negative quantity in a real-world situation. *For example, for an account balance of –30 dollars, write |–30| = 30 to describe the size of the debt in dollars.*
   d. Distinguish comparisons of absolute value from statements about order. *For example, recognize that an account balance less than –30 dollars represents a debt greater than 30 dollars.*
8. Solve real-world and mathematical problems by graphing points in all four quadrants of the coordinate plane. Include use of coordinates and absolute value to find distances between points with the same first coordinate or the same second coordinate.

Expressions and Equations 6.EE

Apply and extend previous understandings of arithmetic to algebraic expressions.

1. Write and evaluate numerical expressions involving whole-number exponents.
2. Write, read, and evaluate expressions in which letters stand for numbers.
   a. Write expressions that record operations with numbers and with letters standing for numbers. *For example, express the calculation "Subtract y from 5" as 5 – y.*
   b. Identify parts of an expression using mathematical terms (sum, term, product, factor, quotient, coefficient); view one or more parts of an expression as a single entity. *For example, describe the expression 2 (8 + 7) as a product of two factors; view (8 + 7) as both a single entity and a sum of two terms.*
   c. Evaluate expressions at specific values of their variables. Include expressions that arise from formulas used in real-world problems. Perform arithmetic operations, including those involving whole-number exponents, in the conventional order when there are no parentheses to specify a particular order (Order of Operations). *For example, use the formulas $V = s^3$ and $A = 6\ s^2$ to find the volume and surface area of a cube with sides of length $s = 1/2$.*
3. Apply the properties of operations to generate equivalent expressions. *For example, apply the distributive property to the expression 3 (2 + x) to produce the equivalent expression 6 + 3x; apply the distributive property to the expression 24x + 18y to produce the equivalent expression 6 (4x + 3y); apply properties of operations to y + y + y to produce the equivalent expression 3y.*
4. Identify when two expressions are equivalent (i.e., when the two expressions name the same number regardless of which value is substituted into them). *For example, the expressions y + y + y and 3y are equivalent because they name the same number regardless of which number y stands for.*

Reason about and solve one-variable equations and inequalities.

5. Understand solving an equation or inequality as a process of answering a question: which values from a specified set, if any, make the equation or inequality true? Use substitution to determine whether a given number in a specified set makes an equation or inequality true.
6. Use variables to represent numbers and write expressions when solving a real-world or mathematical problem; understand that a variable can represent an unknown number, or, depending on the purpose at hand, any number in a specified set.
7. Solve real-world and mathematical problems by writing and solving equations of the form $x + p = q$ and $px = q$ for cases in which p, q and x are all nonnegative rational numbers.
8. Write an inequality of the form $x > c$ or $x < c$ to represent a constraint or condition in a real-world or mathematical problem. Recognize that inequalities of the form $x > c$ or $x < c$ have infinitely many solutions; represent solutions of such inequalities on number line diagrams.

Represent and analyze quantitative relationships between dependent and independent variables.

9. Use variables to represent two quantities in a real-world problem that change in relationship to one another; write an equation to express one quantity, thought of as the dependent variable, in terms of the other quantity, thought of as the independent variable. Analyze the relationship between the dependent and independent variables using graphs and tables, and relate these to the equation. *For example, in a problem involving motion at constant speed, list and graph ordered pairs of distances and times, and write the equation $d = 65t$ to represent the relationship between distance and time.*

Geometry 6.G

Solve real-world and mathematical problems involving area, surface area, and volume.

1. Find the area of right triangles, other triangles, special quadrilaterals, and polygons by composing into rectangles or decomposing into triangles and other shapes; apply these techniques in the context of solving real-world and mathematical problems.
   - MA.1.a. Use the relationship between radius, diameter, and center of a circle to find the circumference and area.
   - MA.1.b. Solve real world and mathematical problems involving the measurements of circles.
2. Find the volume of a right rectangular prism with fractional edge lengths by packing it with unit cubes of the appropriate unit fraction edge lengths, and show that the volume is the same as would be found by multiplying the edge lengths of the prism. Apply the formulas $V = l\ w\ h$ and $V = b\ h$ to find volumes of right rectangular prisms with fractional edge lengths in the context of solving real-world and mathematical problems.
3. Draw polygons in the coordinate plane given coordinates for the vertices; use coordinates to find the length of a side joining points with the same first coordinate or the same second coordinate. Apply these techniques in the context of solving real-world and mathematical problems.
4. Represent three-dimensional figures using nets made up of rectangles and triangles, and use the nets to find the surface area of these figures. Apply these techniques in the context of solving real-world and mathematical problems.

Statistics and Probability 6.SP

Develop understanding of statistical variability.

1. Recognize a statistical question as one that anticipates variability in the data related to the question and accounts for it in the answers. *For example, "How old am I?" is not a statistical question, but "How old are the students in my school?" is a statistical question because one anticipates variability in students' ages.*
2. Understand that a set of data collected to answer a statistical question has a distribution which can be described by its center, spread, and overall shape.
3. Recognize that a measure of center for a numerical data set summarizes all of its values with a single number, while a measure of variation describes how its values vary with a single number.

Summarize and describe distributions.

4. Display numerical data in plots on a number line, including dot plots, histograms, and box plots.
   - MA.4.a Read and interpret circle graphs.

5. Summarize numerical data sets in relation to their context, such as by:
   a. Reporting the number of observations.
   b. Describing the nature of the attribute under investigation, including how it was measured and its units of measurement.
   c. Giving quantitative measures of center (median and/or mean) and variability (interquartile range and/or mean absolute deviation), as well as describing any overall pattern and any striking deviations from the overall pattern with reference to the context in which the data were gathered.
   d. Relating the choice of measures of center and variability to the shape of the data distribution and the context in which the data were gathered.

Grade 7

In Grade 7, instructional time should focus on four critical areas: (1) developing understanding of and applying proportional relationships; (2) developing understanding of operations with rational numbers and working with expressions and linear equations; (3) solving problems involving scale drawings and informal geometric constructions, and working with two- and three-dimensional shapes to solve problems involving area, surface area, and volume; and (4) drawing inferences about populations based on samples.

(1) Students extend their understanding of ratios and develop understanding of proportionality to solve single- and multi-step problems. Students use their understanding of ratios and proportionality to solve a wide variety of percent problems, including those involving discounts, interest, taxes, tips, and percent increase or decrease. Students solve problems about scale drawings by relating corresponding lengths between the objects or by using the fact that relationships of lengths within an object are preserved in similar objects. Students graph proportional relationships and understand the unit rate informally as a measure of the steepness of the related line, called the slope. They distinguish proportional relationships from other relationships.

(2) Students develop a unified understanding of number, recognizing fractions, decimals (that have a finite or a repeating decimal representation), and percents as different representations of rational numbers. Students extend addition, subtraction, multiplication, and division to all rational numbers, maintaining the properties of operations and the relationships between addition and subtraction, and multiplication and division. By applying these properties, and by viewing negative numbers in terms of everyday contexts (e.g., amounts owed or temperatures below zero), students explain and interpret the rules for adding, subtracting, multiplying, and dividing with negative numbers. They use the arithmetic of rational numbers as they formulate expressions and equations in one variable and use these equations to solve problems.

(3) Students continue their work with area from Grade 6, solving problems involving the area and circumference of a circle and surface area of three-dimensional objects. In preparation for work on congruence and similarity in Grade 8 they reason about relationships among two-dimensional figures using scale drawings and informal geometric constructions, and they gain familiarity with the relationships between angles formed by intersecting lines. Students work with three-dimensional figures, relating them to two-dimensional figures by examining cross-sections. They solve real-world and mathematical problems involving area, surface area, and volume of two- and three-dimensional objects composed of triangles, quadrilaterals, polygons, cubes and right prisms.

(4) Students build on their previous work with single data distributions to compare two data distributions and address questions about differences between populations. They begin informal work with random sampling to generate data sets and learn about the importance of representative samples for drawing inferences.

The Mathematical Practice Standards complement the content standards at each grade level so that students increasingly engage with the subject matter as they grow in mathematical maturity and expertise.

Grade 7 Overview

Ratios and Proportional Relationships

- Analyze proportional relationships and use them
  to solve real-world and mathematical problems.

The Number System

- Apply and extend previous understandings of operations with fractions to add, subtract, multiply,
  and divide rational numbers.

Expressions and Equations

- Use properties of operations to generate equivalent expressions.
- Solve real-life and mathematical problems using
  numerical and algebraic expressions and equations.

Geometry

- Draw, construct and describe geometrical figures and describe the relationships between them.
- Solve real-life and mathematical problems involving angle measure, area, surface area, and volume.

Statistics and Probability

- Use random sampling to draw inferences about a population.
- Draw informal comparative inferences about two populations.
- Investigate chance processes and develop, use, and evaluate probability models.

Mathematical Practices

1. Make sense of problems and persevere in solving them.
2. Reason abstractly and quantitatively.
3. Construct viable arguments and critique the reasoning of others.
4. Model with mathematics.
5. Use appropriate tools strategically.
6. Attend to precision.
7. Look for and make use of structure.
8. Look for and express regularity in repeated reasoning.

Ratios and Proportional Relationships 7.RP

Analyze proportional relationships and use them to solve real-world and mathematical problems.

1. Compute unit rates associated with ratios of fractions, including ratios of lengths, areas and other quantities measured in like or different units. *For example, if a person walks ½ mile in each ¼ hour, compute the unit rate as the complex fraction $^{1/2}/_{1/4}$ miles per hour, equivalently 2 miles per hour.*
2. Recognize and represent proportional relationships between quantities.
   a. Decide whether two quantities are in a proportional relationship, e.g., by testing for equivalent ratios in a table or graphing on a coordinate plane and observing whether the graph is a straight line through the origin.
   b. Identify the constant of proportionality (unit rate) in tables, graphs, equations, diagrams, and verbal descriptions of proportional relationships.
   c. Represent proportional relationships by equations. *For example, if total cost t is proportional to the number n of items purchased at a constant price p, the relationship between the total cost and the number of items can be expressed as t = pn.*
   d. Explain what a point (x, y) on the graph of a proportional relationship means in terms of the situation, with special attention to the points (0, 0) and (1, r) where r is the unit rate.
3. Use proportional relationships to solve multistep ratio and percent problems. Examples: simple interest, tax, markups and markdowns, gratuities and commissions, fees, percent increase and decrease, percent error.

The Number System 7.NS

Apply and extend previous understandings of operations with fractions to add, subtract, multiply, and divide rational numbers.

1. Apply and extend previous understandings of addition and subtraction to add and subtract rational numbers; represent addition and subtraction on a horizontal or vertical number line diagram.
   a. Describe situations in which opposite quantities combine to make 0. *For example, a hydrogen atom has 0 charge because its two constituents are oppositely charged.*
   b. Understand $p + q$ as the number located a distance $|q|$ from p, in the positive or negative direction depending on whether q is positive or negative. Show that a number and its opposite have a sum of 0 (are additive inverses). Interpret sums of rational numbers by describing real-world contexts.
   c. Understand subtraction of rational numbers as adding the additive inverse, $p – q = p + (–q)$. Show that the distance between two rational numbers on the number line is the absolute value of their difference, and apply this principle in real-world contexts.
   a. Apply properties of operations as strategies to add and subtract rational numbers.
2. Apply and extend previous understandings of multiplication and division and of fractions to multiply and divide rational numbers.
   a. Understand that multiplication is extended from fractions to rational numbers by requiring that operations continue to satisfy the properties of operations, particularly the distributive property, leading to products such as (–1)(–1) = 1 and the rules for multiplying signed numbers. Interpret products of rational numbers by describing real-world contexts.
   b. Understand that integers can be divided, provided that the divisor is not zero, and every quotient of integers (with non-zero divisor) is a rational number. If p and q are integers, then $–(^p/_q) = {}^{(–p)}/_q = {}^p/_{(–q)}$. Interpret quotients of rational numbers by describing real-world contexts.
   c. Apply properties of operations as strategies to multiply and divide rational numbers.
   d. Convert a rational number to a decimal using long division; know that the decimal form of a rational number terminates in 0s or eventually repeats.
3. Solve real-world and mathematical problems involving the four operations with rational numbers.[26]

[26] Computations with rational numbers extend the rules for manipulating fractions to complex fractions.

Expressions and Equations 7.EE

Use properties of operations to generate equivalent expressions.

1. Apply properties of operations as strategies to add, subtract, factor, and expand linear expressions with rational coefficients.
2. Understand that rewriting an expression in different forms in a problem context can shed light on the problem and how the quantities in it are related. *For example, $a + 0.05a = 1.05a$ means that "increase by 5%" is the same as "multiply by 1.05."*

Solve real-life and mathematical problems using numerical and algebraic expressions and equations.

3. Solve multi-step real-life and mathematical problems posed with positive and negative rational numbers in any form (whole numbers, fractions, and decimals), using tools strategically. Apply properties of operations to calculate with numbers in any form; convert between forms as appropriate; and assess the reasonableness of answers using mental computation and estimation strategies. *For example: If a woman making \$25 an hour gets a 10% raise, she will make an additional $1/10$ of her salary an hour, or \$2.50, for a new salary of \$27.50. If you want to place a towel bar 9 $3/4$ inches long in the center of a door that is 27 $1/2$ inches wide, you will need to place the bar about 9 inches from each edge; this estimate can be used as a check on the exact computation.*
4. Use variables to represent quantities in a real-world or mathematical problem, and construct simple equations and inequalities to solve problems by reasoning about the quantities.
   a. Solve word problems leading to equations of the form $px + q = r$ and $p(x + q) = r$, where p, q, and r are specific rational numbers. Solve equations of these forms fluently. Compare an algebraic solution to an arithmetic solution, identifying the sequence of the operations used in each approach. *For example, the perimeter of a rectangle is 54 cm. Its length is 6 cm. What is its width?*
   b. Solve word problems leading to inequalities of the form $px + q > r$ or $px + q < r$, where p, q, and r are specific rational numbers. Graph the solution set of the inequality and interpret it in the context of the problem. *For example: As a salesperson, you are paid \$50 per week plus \$3 per sale. This week you want your pay to be at least \$100. Write an inequality for the number of sales you need to make, and describe the solutions.*

   MA.4d. Extend analysis of patterns to include analyzing, extending, and determining an expression for simple arithmetic and geometric sequences (e.g., compounding, increasing area), using tables, graphs, words, and expressions.

Geometry 7.G

Draw, construct, and describe geometrical figures and describe the relationships between them.

1. Solve problems involving scale drawings of geometric figures, such as computing actual lengths and areas from a scale drawing and reproducing a scale drawing at a different scale.
2. Draw (freehand, with ruler and protractor, and with technology) geometric shapes with given conditions. Focus on constructing triangles from three measures of angles or sides, noticing when the conditions determine a unique triangle, more than one triangle, or no triangle.
3. Describe the two-dimensional figures that result from slicing three-dimensional figures, as in plane sections of right rectangular prisms and right rectangular pyramids.

Solve real-life and mathematical problems involving angle measure, area, surface area, and volume.

4. Know the formulas for the area and circumference of a circle and solve problems; give an informal derivation of the relationship between the circumference and area of a circle.
5. Use facts about supplementary, complementary, vertical, and adjacent angles in a multi-step problem to write and use them to solve simple equations for an unknown angle in a figure.
6. Solve real-world and mathematical problems involving area, volume and surface area of two- and three-dimensional objects composed of triangles, quadrilaterals, polygons, cubes, and right prisms.

MA.7. Solve real-world and mathematical problems involving the surface area of spheres.

Statistics and Probability 7.SP

Use random sampling to draw inferences about a population.

1. Understand that statistics can be used to gain information about a population by examining a sample of the population; generalizations about a population from a sample are valid only if the sample is representative of that population. Understand that random sampling tends to produce representative samples and support valid inferences.
2. Use data from a random sample to draw inferences about a population with an unknown characteristic of interest. Generate multiple samples (or simulated samples) of the same size to gauge the variation in estimates or predictions. *For example, estimate the mean word length in a book by randomly sampling words from the book; predict the winner of a school election based on randomly sampled survey data. Gauge how far off the estimate or prediction might be.*

Draw informal comparative inferences about two populations.

3. Informally assess the degree of visual overlap of two numerical data distributions with similar variabilities, measuring the difference between the centers by expressing it as a multiple of a measure of variability. *For example, the mean height of players on the basketball team is 10 cm greater than the mean height of players on the soccer team, about twice the variability (mean absolute deviation) on either team; on a dot plot, the separation between the two distributions of heights is noticeable.*
4. Use measures of center and measures of variability for numerical data from random samples to draw informal comparative inferences about two populations. *For example, decide whether the words in a chapter of a seventh-grade science book are generally longer than the words in a chapter of a fourth-grade science book.*

Investigate chance processes and develop, use, and evaluate probability models.

5. Understand that the probability of a chance event is a number between 0 and 1 that expresses the likelihood of the event occurring. Larger numbers indicate greater likelihood. A probability near 0 indicates an unlikely event, a probability around ½ indicates an event that is neither unlikely nor likely, and a probability near 1 indicates a likely event.
6. Approximate the probability of a chance event by collecting data on the chance process that produces it and observing its long-run relative frequency, and predict the approximate relative frequency given the probability. *For example, when rolling a number cube 600 times, predict that a 3 or 6 would be rolled roughly 200 times, but probably not exactly 200 times.*
7. Develop a probability model and use it to find probabilities of events. Compare probabilities from a model to observed frequencies; if the agreement is not good, explain possible sources of the discrepancy.
    a. Develop a uniform probability model by assigning equal probability to all outcomes, and use the model to determine probabilities of events. *For example, if a student is selected at random from a class, find the probability that Jane will be selected and the probability that a girl will be selected.*
    b. Develop a probability model (which may not be uniform) by observing frequencies in data generated from a chance process. *For example, find the approximate probability that a spinning penny will land heads up or that a tossed paper cup will land open-end down. Do the outcomes for the spinning penny appear to be equally likely based on the observed frequencies?*
8. Find probabilities of compound events using organized lists, tables, tree diagrams, and simulation.
    a. Understand that, just as with simple events, the probability of a compound event is the fraction of outcomes in the sample space for which the compound event occurs.
    b. Represent sample spaces for compound events using methods such as organized lists, tables and tree diagrams. For an event described in everyday language (e.g., “rolling double sixes”), identify the outcomes in the sample space which compose the event.
    c. Design and use a simulation to generate frequencies for compound events. *For example, use random digits as a simulation tool to approximate the answer to the question: If 40% of donors have type A blood, what is the probability that it will take at least 4 donors to find one with type A blood?*

Grade 8

In Grade 8, instructional time should focus on three critical areas: (1) formulating and reasoning about expressions and equations, including modeling an association in bivariate data with a linear equation, and solving linear equations and systems of linear equations; (2) grasping the concept of a function and using functions to describe quantitative relationships; (3) analyzing two- and three-dimensional space and figures using distance, angle, similarity, and congruence, and understanding and applying the Pythagorean Theorem.

(1) Students use linear equations and systems of linear equations to represent, analyze, and solve a variety of problems. Students recognize equations for proportions ($y/x = m$ or $y = mx$) as special linear equations ($y = mx + b$), understanding that the constant of proportionality (m) is the slope, and the graphs are lines through the origin. They understand that the slope (m) of a line is a constant rate of change, so that if the input or x-coordinate changes by an amount A, the output or y-coordinate changes by the amount $m \cdot A$. Students also use a linear equation to describe the association between two quantities in bivariate data (such as arm span vs. height for students in a classroom). At this grade, fitting the model, and assessing its fit to the data are done informally. Interpreting the model in the context of the data requires students to express a relationship between the two quantities in question and to interpret components of the relationship (such as slope and y-intercept) in terms of the situation.

Students strategically choose and efficiently implement procedures to solve linear equations in one variable, understanding that when they use the properties of equality and the concept of logical equivalence, they maintain the solutions of the original equation. Students solve systems of two linear equations in two variables and relate the systems to pairs of lines in the plane; these intersect, are parallel, or are the same line. Students use linear equations, systems of linear equations, linear functions, and their understanding of slope of a line to analyze situations and solve problems.

(2) Students grasp the concept of a function as a rule that assigns to each input exactly one output. They understand that functions describe situations where one quantity determines another. They can translate among representations and partial representations of functions (noting that tabular and graphical representations may be partial representations), and they describe how aspects of the function are reflected in the different representations.

(3) Students use ideas about distance and angles, how they behave under translations, rotations, reflections, and dilations, and ideas about congruence and similarity to describe and analyze two-dimensional figures and to solve problems. Students show that the sum of the angles in a triangle is the angle formed by a straight line, and that various configurations of lines give rise to similar triangles because of the angles created when a transversal cuts parallel lines. Students understand the statement of the Pythagorean Theorem and its converse, and can explain why the Pythagorean Theorem holds, for example, by decomposing a square in two different ways. They apply the Pythagorean Theorem to find distances between points on the coordinate plane, to find lengths, and to analyze polygons. Students complete their work on volume by solving problems involving cones, cylinders, and spheres.

The Mathematical Practice Standards complement the content standards at each grade level so that students increasingly engage with the subject matter as they grow in mathematical maturity and expertise.

Grade 8 Overview

The Number System

- Know that there are numbers that are not rational, and approximate them by rational numbers.

Expressions and Equations

- Work with radicals and integer exponents.
- Understand the connections between proportional relationships, lines, and linear equations.
- Analyze and solve linear equations and pairs of simultaneous linear equations.

Functions

- Define, evaluate, and compare functions.
- Use functions to model relationships between quantities.

Geometry

- Understand congruence and similarity using physical models, transparencies, or geometry software.
- Understand and apply the Pythagorean Theorem.
- Solve real-world and mathematical problems involving volume of cylinders, cones and spheres.

Statistics and Probability

- Investigate patterns of association in bivariate data.

Mathematical Practices

1. Make sense of problems and persevere in solving them.
2. Reason abstractly and quantitatively.
3. Construct viable arguments and critique the reasoning of others.
4. Model with mathematics.
5. Use appropriate tools strategically.
6. Attend to precision.
7. Look for and make use of structure.
8. Look for and express regularity in repeated reasoning.

The Number System 8.NS

Know that there are numbers that are not rational, and approximate them by rational numbers.

1. Know that numbers that are not rational are called irrational. Understand informally that every number has a decimal expansion; for rational numbers show that the decimal expansion repeats eventually, and convert a decimal expansion which repeats eventually into a rational number.
2. Use rational approximations of irrational numbers to compare the size of irrational numbers, locate them approximately on a number line diagram, and estimate the value of expressions (e.g., π^2). *For example, by truncating the decimal expansion of* $\sqrt{2}$, *show that* $\sqrt{2}$ *is between 1and 2, then between 1.4 and 1.5, and explain how to continue on to get better approximations.*

Expressions and Equations 8.EE

Work with radicals and integer exponents.

1. Know and apply the properties of integer exponents to generate equivalent numerical expressions. *For example,* $3^2 \times 3^{-5} = 3^{-3} = 1/3^3 = 1/27$.
2. Use square root and cube root symbols to represent solutions to equations of the form $x^2 = p$ and $x^3 = p$, where p is a positive rational number. Evaluate square roots of small perfect squares and cube roots of small perfect cubes. Know that $\sqrt{2}$ is irrational.
3. Use numbers expressed in the form of a single digit times an integer power of 10 to estimate very large or very small quantities, and to express how many times as much one is than the other. *For example, estimate the population of the United States as* 3×10^8 *and the population of the world as* 7×10^9, *and determine that the world population is more than 20 times larger.*
4. Perform operations with numbers expressed in scientific notation, including problems where both decimal and scientific notation are used. Use scientific notation and choose units of appropriate size for measurements of very large or very small quantities (e.g., use millimeters per year for seafloor spreading). Interpret scientific notation that has been generated by technology.

Understand the connections between proportional relationships, lines, and linear equations.

5. Graph proportional relationships, interpreting the unit rate as the slope of the graph. Compare two different proportional relationships represented in different ways. *For example, compare a distance-time graph to a distance-time equation to determine which of two moving objects has greater speed.*
6. Use similar triangles to explain why the slope m is the same between any two distinct points on a non-vertical line in the coordinate plane; derive the equation $y = mx$ for a line through the origin and the equation $y = mx + b$ for a line intercepting the vertical axis at b.

Analyze and solve linear equations and pairs of simultaneous linear equations.

7. Solve linear equations in one variable.
   a. Give examples of linear equations in one variable with one solution, infinitely many solutions, or no solutions. Show which of these possibilities is the case by successively transforming the given equation into simpler forms, until an equivalent equation of the form $x = a$, $a = a$, or $a = b$ results (where a and b are different numbers).
   b. Solve linear equations with rational number coefficients, including equations whose solutions require expanding expressions using the distributive property and collecting like terms.
8. Analyze and solve pairs of simultaneous linear equations.
   a. Understand that solutions to a system of two linear equations in two variables correspond to points of intersection of their graphs, because points of intersection satisfy both equations simultaneously.
   b. Solve systems of two linear equations in two variables algebraically, and estimate solutions by graphing the equations. Solve simple cases by inspection. *For example,* $3x + 2y = 5$ *and* $3x + 2y = 6$ *have no solution because* $3x + 2y$ *cannot simultaneously be 5 and 6.*

c. Solve real-world and mathematical problems leading to two linear equations in two variables. *For example, given coordinates for two pairs of points, determine whether the line through the first pair of points intersects the line through the second pair.*

Functions 8.F

Define, evaluate, and compare functions.

1. Understand that a function is a rule that assigns to each input exactly one output. The graph of a function is the set of ordered pairs consisting of an input and the corresponding output.[27]
2. Compare properties of two functions each represented in a different way (algebraically, graphically, numerically in tables, or by verbal descriptions). *For example, given a linear function represented by a table of values and a linear function represented by an algebraic expression, determine which function has the greater rate of change.*
3. Interpret the equation $y = mx + b$ as defining a linear function, whose graph is a straight line; give examples of functions that are not linear. *For example, the function $A = s^2$ giving the area of a square as a function of its side length is not linear because its graph contains the points (1,1), (2,4) and (3,9), which are not on a straight line.*

Use functions to model relationships between quantities.

4. Construct a function to model a linear relationship between two quantities. Determine the rate of change and initial value of the function from a description of a relationship or from two (x, y) values, including reading these from a table or from a graph. Interpret the rate of change and initial value of a linear function in terms of the situation it models, and in terms of its graph or a table of values.
5. Describe qualitatively the functional relationship between two quantities by analyzing a graph (e.g., where the function is increasing or decreasing, linear or nonlinear). Sketch a graph that exhibits the qualitative features of a function that has been described verbally.

Geometry 8.G

Understand congruence and similarity using physical models, transparencies, or geometry software.

1. Verify experimentally the properties of rotations, reflections, and translations:
   a. Lines are taken to lines, and line segments to line segments of the same length.
   b. Angles are taken to angles of the same measure.
   c. Parallel lines are taken to parallel lines.
2. Understand that a two-dimensional figure is congruent to another if the second can be obtained from the first by a sequence of rotations, reflections, and translations; given two congruent figures, describe a sequence that exhibits the congruence between them.
3. Describe the effect of dilations, translations, rotations, and reflections on two-dimensional figures using coordinates.
4. Understand that a two-dimensional figure is similar to another if the second can be obtained from the first by a sequence of rotations, reflections, translations, and dilations; given two similar two-dimensional figures, describe a sequence that exhibits the similarity between them.
5. Use informal arguments to establish facts about the angle sum and exterior angle of triangles, about the angles created when parallel lines are cut by a transversal, and the angle-angle criterion for similarity of triangles. *For example, arrange three copies of the same triangle so that the sum of the three angles appears to form a line, and give an argument in terms of transversals why this is so.*

Understand and apply the Pythagorean Theorem.

6. Explain a proof of the Pythagorean Theorem and its converse.

[27] Function notation is not required in Grade 8.

7. Apply the Pythagorean Theorem to determine unknown side lengths in right triangles in real-world and mathematical problems in two and three dimensions.
8. Apply the Pythagorean Theorem to find the distance between two points in a coordinate system.

Solve real-world and mathematical problems involving volume of cylinders, cones, and spheres.

9. Know the formulas for the volumes of cones, cylinders, and spheres and use them to solve real-world and mathematical problems.

Statistics and Probability 8.SP

Investigate patterns of association in bivariate data.

1. Construct and interpret scatter plots for bivariate measurement data to investigate patterns of association between two quantities. Describe patterns such as clustering, outliers, positive or negative association, linear association, and nonlinear association.
2. Know that straight lines are widely used to model relationships between two quantitative variables. For scatter plots that suggest a linear association, informally fit a straight line, and informally assess the model fit by judging the closeness of the data points to the line.
3. Use the equation of a linear model to solve problems in the context of bivariate measurement data, interpreting the slope and intercept. *For example, in a linear model for a biology experiment, interpret a slope of 1.5 cm/hr as meaning that an additional hour of sunlight each day is associated with an additional 1.5 cm in mature plant height*.
4. Understand that patterns of association can also be seen in bivariate categorical data by displaying frequencies and relative frequencies in a two-way table. Construct and interpret a two-way table summarizing data on two categorical variables collected from the same subjects. Use relative frequencies calculated for rows or columns to describe possible association between the two variables. *For example, collect data from students in your class on whether or not they have a curfew on school nights and whether or not they have assigned chores at home. Is there evidence that those who have a curfew also tend to have chores?*

Mathematics Standards for High School

The high school standards specify the mathematics that all students should study in order to be college and career ready. Additional mathematics that students should learn in order to take advanced courses such as calculus, advanced statistics, or discrete mathematics is indicated by (+), as in this example:

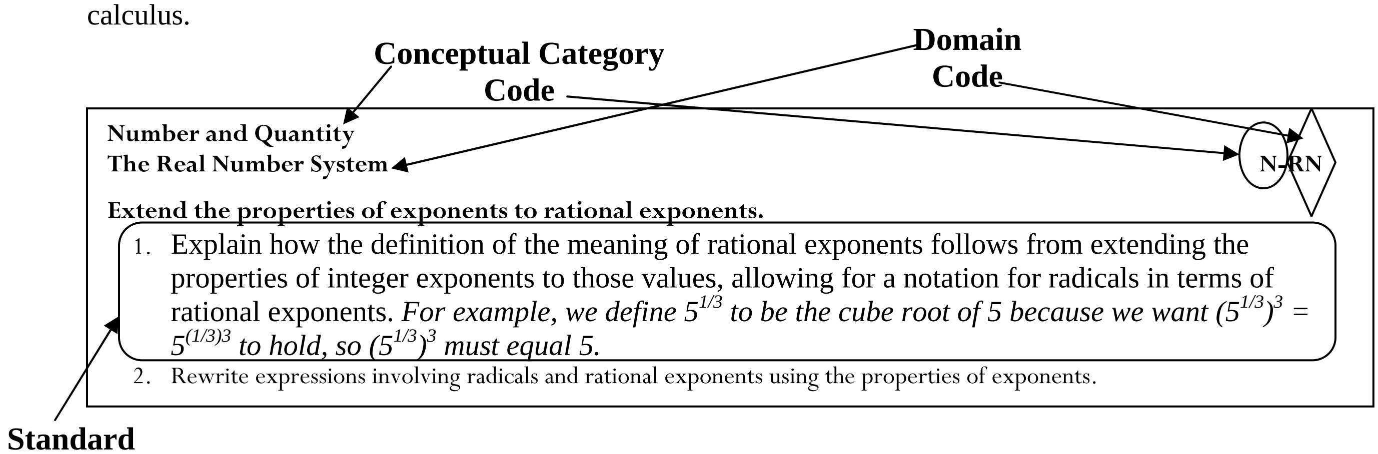
> (+) Represent complex numbers on the complex plane in rectangular and polar form (including real and imaginary numbers).

All standards without a (+) symbol should be in the common mathematics curriculum for all college and career ready students. Standards with a (+) symbol may also appear in courses intended for all students.

The high school standards are listed in conceptual categories:

- Number and Quantity (N)
- Algebra (A)
- Functions (F)
- Modeling (M)
- Geometry (G)
- Statistics and Probability (S).

Conceptual categories portray a coherent view of high school mathematics; a student's work with functions, for example, crosses a number of traditional course boundaries, potentially up through and including calculus.



Each high school standard has a unique identifier that consists of the conceptual category code (N, A, F, M, G, S), the domain code, and the standard number. For example, the standard highlighted above would be identified as N.NR.1, identifying it as a Number and Quantity (conceptual category) standard in The Real Number System domain, and is the first standard in that domain. The standards unique to Massachusetts are included in the conceptual categories Number and Quantity, Algebra, Functions and Geometry, are included in the appropriate domain and cluster and are coded with "MA" to indicate that they are additions. For example, Massachusetts addition "*MA.4c Demonstrate an understanding of the equivalence of factoring, completing the square, or using the quadratic formula to solve quadratic equations*" is identified as MA.A.REI.4c because it is included in the Algebra conceptual category in the Reasoning with Equations and Inequalities domain.

Modeling is best interpreted not as a collection of isolated topics but in relation to other standards. Making mathematical models is a Standard for Mathematical Practice, and specific modeling standards appear throughout the high school standards indicated by a star symbol (★). The star symbol sometimes appears on the heading for a group of standards; in that case, it should be understood to apply to all standards in that group.

Conceptual Category: Number and Quantity

Numbers and Number Systems. During the years from kindergarten to eighth grade, students must repeatedly extend their conception of number. At first, “number” means “counting number”: 1, 2, 3…. Soon after that, 0 is used to represent “none” and the whole numbers are formed by the counting numbers together with zero. The next extension is fractions. At first, fractions are barely numbers and tied strongly to pictorial representations. Yet by the time students understand division of fractions, they have a strong concept of fractions as numbers and have connected them, via their decimal representations, with the base-ten system used to represent the whole numbers. During middle school, fractions are augmented by negative fractions to form the rational numbers. In Grade 8, students extend this system once more, augmenting the rational numbers with the irrational numbers to form the real numbers. In high school, students will be exposed to yet another extension of number, when the real numbers are augmented by the imaginary numbers to form the complex numbers.

With each extension of number, the meanings of addition, subtraction, multiplication, and division are extended. In each new number system—integers, rational numbers, real numbers, and complex numbers—the four operations stay the same in two important ways: They have the commutative, associative, and distributive properties and their new meanings are consistent with their previous meanings.

Extending the properties of whole-number exponents leads to new and productive notation. For example, properties of whole-number exponents suggest that $(5^{1/3})^3$ should be $5^{(1/3)\cdot 3} = 5^1 = 5$ and that $5^{1/3}$ should be the cube root of 5.

Calculators, spreadsheets, and computer algebra systems can provide ways for students to become better acquainted with these new number systems and their notation. They can be used to generate data for numerical experiments, to help understand the workings of matrix, vector, and complex number algebra, and to experiment with non-integer exponents.

Quantities. In real world problems, the answers are usually not numbers but quantities: numbers with units, which involves measurement. In their work in measurement up through Grade 8, students primarily measure commonly used attributes such as length, area, and volume. In high school, students encounter a wider variety of units in modeling, e.g., acceleration, currency conversions, derived quantities such as person-hours and heating degree days, social science rates such as per-capita income, and rates in everyday life such as points scored per game or batting averages. They also encounter novel situations in which they themselves must conceive the attributes of interest. For example, to find a good measure of overall highway safety, they might propose measures such as fatalities per year, fatalities per year per driver, or fatalities per vehicle-mile traveled. Such a conceptual process is sometimes called quantification. Quantification is important for science, as when surface area suddenly “stands out” as an important variable in evaporation. Quantification is also important for companies, which must conceptualize relevant attributes and create or choose suitable measures for them.

Number and Quantity Overview

The Real Number System

- Extend the properties of exponents to rational exponents.
- Use properties of rational and irrational numbers.

Quantities

- Reason quantitatively and use units to solve problems.

The Complex Number System

- Perform arithmetic operations with complex numbers.
- Represent complex numbers and their operations on the complex plane.
- Use complex numbers in polynomial identities and equations.

Vector and Matrix Quantities

- Represent and model with vector quantities.
- Perform operations on vectors.
- Perform operations on matrices and use matrices in applications.

Mathematical Practices

1. Make sense of problems and persevere in solving them.
2. Reason abstractly and quantitatively.
3. Construct viable arguments and critique the reasoning of others.
4. Model with mathematics.
5. Use appropriate tools strategically.
6. Attend to precision.
7. Look for and make use of structure.
8. Look for and express regularity in repeated reasoning.

The Real Number System N-RN

Extend the properties of exponents to rational exponents.

1. Explain how the definition of the meaning of rational exponents follows from extending the properties of integer exponents to those values, allowing for a notation for radicals in terms of rational exponents. *For example, we define $5^{1/3}$ to be the cube root of 5 because we want $(5^{1/3})^3 = 5^{(1/3)3}$ to hold, so $(5^{1/3})^3$ must equal 5.*
2. Rewrite expressions involving radicals and rational exponents using the properties of exponents.

Use properties of rational and irrational numbers.

3. Explain why the sum or product of two rational numbers are rational; that the sum of a rational number and an irrational number is irrational; and that the product of a nonzero rational number and an irrational number is irrational.

Quantities★ N-Q

Reason quantitatively and use units to solve problems.★

1. Use units as a way to understand problems and to guide the solution of multi-step problems; choose and interpret units consistently in formulas; choose and interpret the scale and the origin in graphs and data displays. ★
2. Define appropriate quantities for the purpose of descriptive modeling. ★
3. Choose a level of accuracy appropriate to limitations on measurement when reporting quantities. ★
   MA.3a. Describe the effects of approximate error in measurement and rounding on measurements and on computed values from measurements. Identify significant figures in recorded measures and computed values based on the context given and the precision of the tools used to measure. ★

The Complex Number System N-CN

Perform arithmetic operations with complex numbers.

1. Know there is a complex number i such that $i^2 = -1$, and every complex number has the form $a + bi$ with a and b real.
2. Use the relation $i^2 = –1$ and the commutative, associative, and distributive properties to add, subtract, and multiply complex numbers.
3. (+) Find the conjugate of a complex number; use conjugates to find moduli and quotients of complex numbers.

Represent complex numbers and their operations on the complex plane.

4. (+) Represent complex numbers on the complex plane in rectangular and polar form (including real and imaginary numbers), and explain why the rectangular and polar forms of a given complex number represent the same number.
5. (+) Represent addition, subtraction, multiplication, and conjugation of complex numbers geometrically on the complex plane; use properties of this representation for computation. *For example, $(-1 + \sqrt{3}\, i)^3 = 8$ because $(-1 + \sqrt{3}\, i)$ has modulus 2 and argument 120°.*
6. (+) Calculate the distance between numbers in the complex plane as the modulus of the difference, and the midpoint of a segment as the average of the numbers at its endpoints.

Use complex numbers in polynomial identities and equations.

7. Solve quadratic equations with real coefficients that have complex solutions.
8. (+) Extend polynomial identities to the complex numbers. *For example, rewrite $x^2 + 4$ as $(x + 2i)(x – 2i)$.*

★ Specific modeling standards appear through out the high school standards indicated by a star symbol (★) The star symbol appearing on the cluster heading should be understood to indicate that all standards in that cluster are modeling standards.

9. (+) Know the Fundamental Theorem of Algebra; show that it is true for quadratic polynomials.

Vector and Matrix Quantities N-VM

Represent and model with vector quantities.

1. (+) Recognize vector quantities as having both magnitude and direction. Represent vector quantities by directed line segments, and use appropriate symbols for vectors and their magnitudes (e.g., *v*, |*v*|, ||*v*||, *v*).
2. (+) Find the components of a vector by subtracting the coordinates of an initial point from the coordinates of a terminal point.
3. (+) Solve problems involving velocity and other quantities that can be represented by vectors.

Perform operations on vectors.

4. (+) Add and subtract vectors.
    a. Add vectors end-to-end, component-wise, and by the parallelogram rule. Understand that the magnitude of a sum of two vectors is typically not the sum of the magnitudes.
    b. Given two vectors in magnitude and direction form, determine the magnitude and direction of their sum.
    c. Understand vector subtraction $v - w$ as $v + (-w)$, where $-w$ is the additive inverse of w, with the same magnitude as w and pointing in the opposite direction. Represent vector subtraction graphically by connecting the tips in the appropriate order, and perform vector subtraction component-wise.
5. (+) Multiply a vector by a scalar.
    a. Represent scalar multiplication graphically by scaling vectors and possibly reversing their direction; perform scalar multiplication component-wise, e.g., as $c(v_x, v_y) = (cv_x, cv_y)$.
    b. Compute the magnitude of a scalar multiple cv using $||cv|| = |c|v$. Compute the direction of $c\mathbf{v}$ knowing that when $|c|v \neq 0$, the direction of cv is either along v (for $c > 0$) or against v (for $c < 0$).

Perform operations on matrices and use matrices in applications.

6. (+) Use matrices to represent and manipulate data, e.g., to represent payoffs or incidence relationships in a network.
7. (+) Multiply matrices by scalars to produce new matrices, e.g., as when all of the payoffs in a game are doubled.
8. (+) Add, subtract, and multiply matrices of appropriate dimensions.
9. (+) Understand that, unlike multiplication of numbers, matrix multiplication for square matrices is not a commutative operation, but still satisfies the associative and distributive properties.
10. (+) Understand that the zero and identity matrices play a role in matrix addition and multiplication similar to the role of 0 and 1 in the real numbers. The determinant of a square matrix is nonzero if and only if the matrix has a multiplicative inverse.
11. (+) Multiply a vector (regarded as a matrix with one column) by a matrix of suitable dimensions to produce another vector. Work with matrices as transformations of vectors.
12. (+) Work with 2×2 matrices as transformations of the plane, and interpret the absolute value of the determinant in terms of area.

Conceptual Category: Algebra

Expressions An expression is a record of a computation with numbers, symbols that represent numbers, arithmetic operations, exponentiation, and, at more advanced levels, the operation of evaluating a function. Conventions about the use of parentheses and the order of operations assure that each expression is unambiguous. Creating an expression that describes a computation involving a general quantity requires the ability to express the computation in general terms, abstracting from specific instances.

Reading an expression with comprehension involves analysis of its underlying structure. This may suggest a different but equivalent way of writing the expression that exhibits some different aspect of its meaning. For example, $p + 0.05p$ can be interpreted as the addition of a 5% tax to a price p. Rewriting $p + 0.05p$ as $1.05p$ shows that adding a tax is the same as multiplying the price by a constant factor.

Algebraic manipulations are governed by the properties of operations and exponents, and the conventions of algebraic notation. At times, an expression is the result of applying operations to simpler expressions. For example, $p + 0.05p$ is the sum of the simpler expressions p and $0.05p$. Viewing an expression as the result of operation on simpler expressions can sometimes clarify its underlying structure.

A spreadsheet or a computer algebra system (CAS) can be used to experiment with algebraic expressions, perform complicated algebraic manipulations, and understand how algebraic manipulations behave.

Equations and inequalities An equation is a statement of equality between two expressions, often viewed as a question asking for which values of the variables the expressions on either side are in fact equal. These values are the solutions to the equation. An identity, in contrast, is true for all values of the variables; identities are often developed by rewriting an expression in an equivalent form.

The solutions of an equation in one variable form a set of numbers; the solutions of an equation in two variables form a set of ordered pairs of numbers, which can be plotted in the coordinate plane. Two or more equations and/or inequalities form a system. A solution for such a system must satisfy every equation and inequality in the system.

An equation can often be solved by successively deducing from it one or more simpler equations. For example, one can add the same constant to both sides without changing the solutions, but squaring both sides might lead to extraneous solutions. Strategic competence in solving includes looking ahead for productive manipulations and anticipating the nature and number of solutions.

Some equations have no solutions in a given number system, but have a solution in a larger system. For example, the solution of $x + 1 = 0$ is an integer, not a whole number; the solution of $2x + 1 = 0$ is a rational number, not an integer; the solutions of $x^2 – 2 = 0$ are real numbers, not rational numbers; and the solutions of $x^2 + 2 = 0$ are complex numbers, not real numbers.

The same solution techniques used to solve equations can be used to rearrange formulas. For example, the formula for the area of a trapezoid, $A = ((b_1+b_2)/2)h$, can be solved for h using the same deductive process.

Inequalities can be solved by reasoning about the properties of inequality. Many, but not all, of the properties of equality continue to hold for inequalities and can be useful in solving them.

Connections to Functions and Modeling. Expressions can define functions, and equivalent expressions define the same function. Asking when two functions have the same value for the same input leads to an equation; graphing the two functions allows for finding approximate solutions of the equation. Converting a verbal description to an equation, inequality, or system of these is an essential skill in modeling.

Algebra Overview

Seeing Structure in Expressions

- Interpret the structure of expressions.
- Write expressions in equivalent forms to solve problems.

Arithmetic with Polynomials and Rational Expressions

- Perform arithmetic operations on polynomials.
- Understand the relationship between zeros and factors of polynomials.
- Use polynomial identities to solve problems.
- Rewrite rational expressions.

Mathematical Practices

1. Make sense of problems and persevere in solving them.
2. Reason abstractly and quantitatively.
3. Construct viable arguments and critique the reasoning of others.
4. Model with mathematics.
5. Use appropriate tools strategically.
6. Attend to precision.
7. Look for and make use of structure.
8. Look for and express regularity in repeated reasoning.

Creating Equations

- Create equations that describe numbers or relationships.

Reasoning with Equations and Inequalities

- Understand solving equations as a process of reasoning and explain the reasoning.
- Solve equations and inequalities in one variable.
- Solve systems of equations.
- Represent and solve equations and inequalities graphically.

Seeing Structure in Expressions A-SSE

Interpret the structure of expressions.

1. Interpret expressions that represent a quantity in terms of its context.★
   a. Interpret parts of an expression, such as terms, factors, and coefficients.
   b. Interpret complicated expressions by viewing one or more of their parts as a single entity. *For example, interpret $P(1+r)^n$ as the product of P and a factor not depending on P.*
2. Use the structure of an expression to identify ways to rewrite it. *For example, see $x^4 – y^4$ as $(x^2)^2 – (y^2)^2$, thus recognizing it as a difference of squares that can be factored as $(x^2 – y^2)(x^2 + y^2)$.*

Write expressions in equivalent forms to solve problems.

3. Choose and produce an equivalent form of an expression to reveal and explain properties of the quantity represented by the expression.★
   a. Factor a quadratic expression to reveal the zeros of the function it defines.
   b. Complete the square in a quadratic expression to reveal the maximum or minimum value of the function it defines.
   c. Use the properties of exponents to transform expressions for exponential functions. *For example the expression 1.15^t can be rewritten as $(1.15^{1/12})^{12t} \approx 1.012^{12t}$ to reveal the approximate equivalent monthly interest rate if the annual rate is 15%.*
4. Derive the formula for the sum of a finite geometric series (when the common ratio is not 1), and use the formula to solve problems. *For example, calculate mortgage payments.*

Arithmetic with Polynomials and Rational Expressions A-APR

Perform arithmetic operations on polynomials.

1. Understand that polynomials form a system analogous to the integers, namely, they are closed under the operations of addition, subtraction, and multiplication; add, subtract, and multiply polynomials.
   MA.1a. Divide polynomials.

Understand the relationship between zeros and factors of polynomials.

2. Know and apply the Remainder Theorem: For a polynomial $p(x)$ and a number a, the remainder on division by $x – a$ is $p(a)$, so $p(a) = 0$ if and only if $(x – a)$ is a factor of $p(x)$.
3. Identify zeros of polynomials when suitable factorizations are available, and use the zeros to construct a rough graph of the function defined by the polynomial.

Use polynomial identities to solve problems.

4. Prove polynomial identities and use them to describe numerical relationships. *For example, the polynomial identity $(x^2 + y^2)^2 = (x^2 – y^2)^2 + (2xy)^2$ can be used to generate Pythagorean triples.*
5. (+) Know and apply the Binomial Theorem for the expansion of $(x + y)^n$ in powers of x and y for a positive integer n, where x and y are any numbers, with coefficients determined for example by Pascal's Triangle.[28]

Rewrite rational expressions.

6. Rewrite simple rational expressions in different forms; write $a(x)/b(x)$ in the form $q(x) + r(x)/b(x)$, where $a(x)$, $b(x)$, $q(x)$, and $r(x)$ are polynomials with the degree of $r(x)$ less than the degree of $b(x)$, using inspection, long division, or, for the more complicated examples, a computer algebra system.
7. (+) Understand that rational expressions form a system analogous to the rational numbers, closed under addition, subtraction, multiplication, and division by a nonzero rational expression; add, subtract, multiply, and divide rational expressions.

★ Specific modeling standards appear through out the high school standards indicated by a star symbol (★) The star symbol appearing on the cluster heading should be understood to indicate that all standards in that cluster are modeling standards.

[28] The Binomial Theorem can be proved by mathematical induction or by a combinatorial argument.

Creating Equations★ A-CED

Create equations that describe numbers or relationships. ★

1. Create equations and inequalities in one variable and use them to solve problems. *Include equations arising from linear and quadratic functions, and simple rational and exponential functions.* ★
2. Create equations in two or more variables to represent relationships between quantities; graph equations on coordinate axes with labels and scales. ★
3. Represent constraints by equations or inequalities, and by systems of equations and/or inequalities, and interpret solutions as viable or non-viable options in a modeling context. *For example, represent inequalities describing nutritional and cost constraints on combinations of different foods.* ★
4. Rearrange formulas to highlight a quantity of interest, using the same reasoning as in solving equations. *For example, rearrange Ohm's law V = IR to highlight resistance R.* ★.

Reasoning with Equations and Inequalities A-REI

Understand solving equations as a process of reasoning and explain the reasoning.

1. Explain each step in solving a simple equation as following from the equality of numbers asserted at the previous step, starting from the assumption that the original equation has a solution. Construct a viable argument to justify a solution method.
2. Solve simple rational and radical equations in one variable, and give examples showing how extraneous solutions may arise.

Solve equations and inequalities in one variable.

3. Solve linear equations and inequalities in one variable, including equations with coefficients represented by letters.
   MA.3.a. Solve linear equations and inequalities in one varialbe involving absolute value.
4. Solve quadratic equations in one variable.
   a. Use the method of completing the square to transform any quadratic equation in x into an equation of the form $(x - p)^2 = q$ that has the same solutions. Derive the quadratic formula from this form.
   b. Solve quadratic equations by inspection (e.g., for $x^2 = 49$), taking square roots, completing the square, the quadratic formula and factoring, as appropriate to the initial form of the equation. Recognize when the quadratic formula gives complex solutions and write them as $a \pm bi$ for real numbers a and b.

   MA.4c. Demonstrate an understanding of the equivalence of factoring, completing the square, or using the quadratic formula to solve quadratic equations.

Solve systems of equations.

5. Prove that, given a system of two equations in two variables, replacing one equation by the sum of that equation and a multiple of the other produces a system with the same solutions.
6. Solve systems of linear equations exactly and approximately (e.g., with graphs), focusing on pairs of linear equations in two variables.
7. Solve a simple system consisting of a linear equation and a quadratic equation in two variables algebraically and graphically. *For example, find the points of intersection between the line $y = -3x$ and the circle $x^2 + y^2 = 3$.*
8. (+) Represent a system of linear equations as a single matrix equation in a vector variable.
9. (+) Find the inverse of a matrix if it exists and use it to solve systems of linear equations (using technology for matrices of dimension 3×3 or greater).

Represent and solve equations and inequalities graphically.

10. Understand that the graph of an equation in two variables is the set of all its solutions plotted in the coordinate plane, often forming a curve (which could be a line).

★ Specific modeling standards appear through out the high school standards indicated by a star symbol (★) The star symbol appearing on the cluster heading should be understood to indicate that all standards in that cluster are modeling standards.

11. Explain why the x-coordinates of the points where the graphs of the equations $y = f(x)$ and $y = g(x)$ intersect are the solutions of the equation $f(x) = g(x)$; find the solutions approximately, e.g., using technology to graph the functions, make tables of values, or find successive approximations. Include cases where $f(x)$ and/or $g(x)$ are linear, polynomial, rational, absolute value, exponential, and logarithmic functions.★
12. Graph the solutions to a linear inequality in two variables as a half-plane (excluding the boundary in the case of a strict inequality), and graph the solution set to a system of linear inequalities in two variables as the intersection of the corresponding half-planes.

Conceptual Category: Functions

Functions describe situations where one quantity determines another. For example, the return on $10,000 invested at an annualized percentage rate of 4.25% is a function of the length of time the money is invested. Because we continually make theories about dependencies between quantities in nature and society, functions are important tools in the construction of mathematical models.

In school mathematics, functions usually have numerical inputs and outputs and are often defined by an algebraic expression. For example, the time in hours it takes for a car to drive 100 miles is a function of the car's speed in miles per hour, v; the rule $T(v) = 100/v$ expresses this relationship algebraically and defines a function whose name is T.

The set of inputs to a function is called its domain. We often infer the domain to be all inputs for which the expression defining a function has a value, or for which the function makes sense in a given context.

A function can be described in various ways, such as by a graph (e.g., the trace of a seismograph); by a verbal rule, as in, "I'll give you a state, you give me the capital city;" by an algebraic expression like $f(x) = a + bx$; or by a recursive rule. The graph of a function is often a useful way of visualizing the relationship of the function models, and manipulating a mathematical expression for a function can throw light on the function's properties.

Functions presented as expressions can model many important phenomena. Two important families of functions characterized by laws of growth are linear functions, which grow at a constant rate, and exponential functions, which grow at a constant percent rate. Linear functions with a constant term of zero describe proportional relationships.

A graphing utility or a computer algebra system can be used to experiment with properties of these functions and their graphs and to build computational models of functions, including recursively defined functions.

Connections to Expressions, Equations, Modeling, and Coordinates. Determining an output value for a particular input involves evaluating an expression; finding inputs that yield a given output involves solving an equation. Questions about when two functions have the same value for the same input lead to equations, whose solutions can be visualized from the intersection of their graphs. Because functions describe relationships between quantities, they are frequently used in modeling. Sometimes functions are defined by a recursive process, which can be displayed effectively using a spreadsheet or other technology.

Functions Overview

Interpreting Functions

- Understand the concept of a function and use function notation.
- Interpret functions that arise in applications in terms of the context.
- Analyze functions using different representations.

Mathematical Practices

1. Make sense of problems and persevere in solving them.
2. Reason abstractly and quantitatively.
3. Construct viable arguments and critique the reasoning of others.
4. Model with mathematics.
5. Use appropriate tools strategically.
6. Attend to precision.
7. Look for and make use of structure.
8. Look for and express regularity in repeated reasoning.

Building Functions

- Build a function that models a relationship between two quantities.
- Build new functions from existing functions.

Linear, Quadratic, and Exponential Models

- Construct and compare linear, quadratic, and exponential models and solve problems.
- Interpret expressions for functions in terms of the situation they model.

Trigonometric Functions

- Extend the domain of trigonometric functions using the unit circle.
- Model periodic phenomena with trigonometric functions.
- Prove and apply trigonometric identities.

Interpreting Functions F-IF

Understand the concept of a function and use function notation.

1. Understand that a function from one set (called the domain) to another set (called the range) assigns to each element of the domain exactly one element of the range. If f is a function and x is an element of its domain, then $f(x)$ denotes the output of f corresponding to the input x. The graph of f is the graph of the equation $y = f(x)$.
2. Use function notation, evaluate functions for inputs in their domains, and interpret statements that use function notation in terms of a context.
3. Recognize that sequences are functions, sometimes defined recursively, whose domain is a subset of the integers. *For example, the Fibonacci sequence is defined recursively by* $f(0) = f(1) = 1$, $f(n+1) = f(n) + f(n-1)$ *for* $n \geq 1$.

Interpret functions that arise in applications in terms of the context.★

4. For a function that models a relationship between two quantities, interpret key features of graphs and tables in terms of the quantities, and sketch graphs showing key features given a verbal description of the relationship. *Key features include: intercepts; intervals where the function is increasing, decreasing, positive, or negative; relative maximums and minimums; symmetries; end behavior; and periodicity.* ★
5. Relate the domain of a function to its graph and, where applicable, to the quantitative relationship it describes. *For example, if the function h(n) gives the number of person-hours it takes to assemble n engines in a factory, then the positive integers would be an appropriate domain for the function.* ★
6. Calculate and interpret the average rate of change of a function (presented symbolically or as a table) over a specified interval. Estimate the rate of change from a graph. ★

Analyze functions using different representations.

7. Graph functions expressed symbolically and show key features of the graph, by hand in simple cases and using technology for more complicated cases. ★
   a. Graph linear and quadratic functions and show intercepts, maxima, and minima.
   b. Graph square root, cube root, and piecewise-defined functions, including step functions and absolute value functions.
   c. Graph polynomial functions, identifying zeros when suitable factorizations are available, and showing end behavior.
   d. (+) Graph rational functions, identifying zeros and asymptotes when suitable factorizations are available, and showing end behavior.
   e. Graph exponential and logarithmic functions, showing intercepts and end behavior, and trigonometric functions, showing period, midline, and amplitude.
8. Write a function defined by an expression in different but equivalent forms to reveal and explain different properties of the function.
   a. Use the process of factoring and completing the square in a quadratic function to show zeros, extreme values, and symmetry of the graph, and interpret these in terms of a context.
   b. Use the properties of exponents to interpret expressions for exponential functions. *For example, identify percent rate of change in functions such as* $y = (1.02)^t$, $y = (0.97)^t$, $y = (1.01)^{12t}$, $y = (1.2)^{t/10}$, *and classify them as representing exponential growth or decay.*

   MA.8c. Translate between different representations of functions and relations: graphs, equations, point sets, and tables.
9. Compare properties of two functions each represented in a different way (algebraically, graphically, numerically in tables, or by verbal descriptions). *For example, given a graph of one quadratic function and an algebraic expression for another, say which has the larger maximum.*

★ Specific modeling standards appear through out the high school standards indicated by a star symbol (★) The star symbol appearing on the cluster heading should be understood to indicate that all standards in that cluster are modeling standards.

MA.10. Given algebraic, numeric and/or graphical representations of functions, recognize the function as polynomial, rational, logarithmic, exponential, or trigonometric.

Building Functions **F-BF**

Build a function that models a relationship between two quantities.

1. Write a function that describes a relationship between two quantities. ★
   a. Determine an explicit expression, a recursive process, or steps for calculation from a context.
   b. Combine standard function types using arithmetic operations. *For example, build a function that models the temperature of a cooling body by adding a constant function to a decaying exponential, and relate these functions to the model.*
   c. (+) Compose functions. *For example, if T(y) is the temperature in the atmosphere as a function of height, and h(t) is the height of a weather balloon as a function of time, then T(h(t)) is the temperature at the location of the weather balloon as a function of time.*
2. Write arithmetic and geometric sequences both recursively and with an explicit formula, use them to model situations, and translate between the two forms. ★

Build new functions from existing functions.

3. Identify the effect on the graph of replacing $f(x)$ by $f(x) + k$, $k\,f(x)$, $f(kx)$, and $f(x + k)$ for specific values of k (both positive and negative); find the value of k given the graphs. Experiment with cases and illustrate an explanation of the effects on the graph using technology. *Include recognizing even and odd functions from their graphs and algebraic expressions for them.*
4. Find inverse functions.
   a. Solve an equation of the form $f(x) = c$ for a simple function f that has an inverse and write an expression for the inverse. *For example,* $f(x) =2\,x^3$ *or* $f(x) = (x+1)/(x-1)$ *for* $x \neq 1$.
   b. (+) Verify by composition that one function is the inverse of another.
   c. (+) Read values of an inverse function from a graph or a table, given that the function has an inverse.
   d. (+) Produce an invertible function from a non-invertible function by restricting the domain.
5. (+) Understand the inverse relationship between exponents and logarithms and use this relationship to solve problems involving logarithms and exponents.

Linear, Quadratic, and Exponential Models★ **F-LQE**

Construct and compare linear, quadratic, and exponential models and solve problems. ★

1. Distinguish between situations that can be modeled with linear functions and with exponential functions. ★
   a. Prove that linear functions grow by equal differences over equal intervals, and that exponential functions grow by equal factors over equal intervals.
   b. Recognize situations in which one quantity changes at a constant rate per unit interval relative to another.
   c. Recognize situations in which a quantity grows or decays by a constant percent rate per unit interval relative to another.
2. Construct linear and exponential functions, including arithmetic and geometric sequences, given a graph, a description of a relationship, or two input-output pairs (include reading these from a table). ★
3. Observe using graphs and tables that a quantity increasing exponentially eventually exceeds a quantity increasing linearly, quadratically, or (more generally) as a polynomial function. ★
4. For exponential models, express as a logarithm the solution to $a\,b^{ct} = d$ where a, c, and d are numbers and the base b is 2, 10, or e; evaluate the logarithm using technology. ★

★ Specific modeling standards appear through out the high school standards indicated by a star symbol (★) The star symbol appearing on the cluster heading should be understood to indicate that all standards in that cluster are modeling standards.

Interpret expressions for functions in terms of the situation they model. ★

5. Interpret the parameters in a linear, quadratic, or exponential function in terms of a context. ★

Trigonometric Functions **F-TF**

Extend the domain of trigonometric functions using the unit circle.

1. Understand radian measure of an angle as the length of the arc on the unit circle subtended by the angle.
2. Explain how the unit circle in the coordinate plane enables the extension of trigonometric functions to all real numbers, interpreted as radian measures of angles traversed counterclockwise around the unit circle.
3. (+) Use special triangles to determine geometrically the values of sine, cosine, tangent for $\pi/3$, $\pi/4$ and $\pi/6$, and use the unit circle to express the values of sine, cosine, and tangent for $\pi - x$, $\pi + x$, and $2\pi - x$ in terms of their values for x, where x is any real number.
4. (+) Use the unit circle to explain symmetry (odd and even) and periodicity of trigonometric functions.

Model periodic phenomena with trigonometric functions. ★

5. Choose trigonometric functions to model periodic phenomena with specified amplitude, frequency, and midline.★
6. (+) Understand that restricting a trigonometric function to a domain on which it is always increasing or always decreasing allows its inverse to be constructed. ★
7. (+) Use inverse functions to solve trigonometric equations that arise in modeling contexts; evaluate the solutions using technology, and interpret them in terms of the context. ★

Prove and apply trigonometric identities.

8. Prove the Pythagorean identity $\sin^2(\theta) + \cos^2(\theta) = 1$ and use it find $\sin(\theta)$, $\cos(\theta)$, or $\tan(\theta)$ given $\sin(\theta)$, $\cos(\theta)$, or $\tan(\theta)$ and the quadrant.
9. (+) Prove the addition and subtraction formulas for sine, cosine, and tangent and use them to solve problems.

★ Specific modeling standards appear through out the high school standards indicated by a star symbol (★) The star symbol appearing on the cluster heading should be understood to indicate that all standards in that cluster are modeling standards.

Conceptual Category: Modeling

Modeling links classroom mathematics and statistics to everyday life, work, and decision-making. Modeling is the process of choosing and using appropriate mathematics and statistics to analyze empirical situations, to understand them better, and to improve decisions. Quantities and their relationships in physical, economic, public policy, social, and everyday situations can be modeled using mathematical and statistical methods. When making mathematical models, technology is valuable for varying assumptions, exploring consequences, and comparing predictions with data.

A model can be very simple, such as writing total cost as a product of unit price and number bought, or using a geometric shape to describe a physical object like a coin. Even such simple models involve making choices. It is up to us whether to model a coin as a three-dimensional cylinder, or whether a two-dimensional disk works well enough for our purposes. Other situations—modeling a delivery route, a production schedule, or a comparison of loan amortizations—need more elaborate models that use other tools from the mathematical sciences. Real-world situations are not organized and labeled for analysis; formulating tractable models, representing such models, and analyzing them is appropriately a creative process. Like every such process, this depends on acquired expertise as well as creativity.

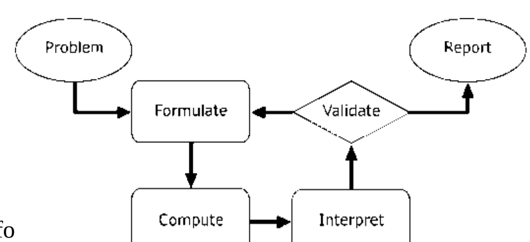
Some examples of such situations might include:

- Estimating how much water and food is needed for emergency relief in a devastated city of 3 million people, and how it might be distributed.
- Planning a table tennis tournament for 7 players at a club with 4 tables, where each player plays against each other player.
- Designing the layout of the stalls in a school fair so as to raise as much money as possible.
- Analyzing stopping distance for a car.
- Modeling savings account balance, bacterial colony growth, or investment growth.
- Engaging in critical path analysis, e.g., applied to turnaround of an aircraft at an airport.
- Analyzing risk in situations such as extreme sports, pandemics, and terrorism.
- Relating population statistics to individual predictions.

In situations like these, the models devised depend on a number of factors: How precise an answer do we want or need? What aspects of the situation do we most need to understand, control, or optimize? What resources of time and tools do we have? The range of models that we can create and analyze is also constrained by the limitations of our mathematical, statistical, and technical skills, and our ability to recognize significant variables and relationships among them. Diagrams of various kinds, spreadsheets and other technology, and algebra are powerful tools for understanding and solving problems drawn from different types of real-world situations.

One of the insights provided by mathematical modeling is that essentially the same mathematical or statistical structure can sometimes model seemingly different situations. Models can also shed light on the mathematical structures themselves, for example, as when a model of bacterial growth makes more vivid the explosive growth of the exponential function.

The basic modeling cycle is summarized in the diagram. It involves (1) identifying variables in the situation and selecting those that represent essential features, (2) formulating a model by creating and selecting geometric,



graphical, tabular, algebraic, or statistical representations that describe relationships between the variables, (3) analyzing and performing operations on these relationships to draw conclusions, (4) interpreting the results of the mathematics in terms of the original situation, (5) validating the conclusions by comparing them with the situation, and then either improving the model or, if it is acceptable, (6) reporting on the conclusions and the reasoning behind them. Choices, assumptions, and approximations are present throughout this cycle.

In descriptive modeling, a model simply describes the phenomena or summarizes them in a compact form. Graphs of observations are a familiar descriptive model—for example, graphs of global temperature and atmospheric CO_2 over time.

Analytic modeling seeks to explain data on the basis of deeper theoretical ideas, albeit with parameters that are empirically based; for example, exponential growth of bacterial colonies (until cut-off mechanisms such as pollution or starvation intervene) follows from a constant reproduction rate. Functions are an important tool for analyzing such problems.

Graphing utilities, spreadsheets, computer algebra systems, and dynamic geometry software are powerful tools that can be used to model purely mathematical phenomena (e.g., the behavior of polynomials) as well as physical phenomena.

Modeling Standards *Modeling is best interpreted not as a collection of isolated topics but rather in relation to other standards. Making mathematical models is a Standard for Mathematical Practice, and specific modeling standards appear throughout the high school standards indicated by a star symbol (★).*

Conceptual Category: Geometry

An understanding of the attributes and relationships of geometric objects can be applied in diverse contexts—interpreting a schematic drawing, estimating the amount of wood needed to frame a sloping roof, rendering computer graphics, or designing a sewing pattern for the most efficient use of material.

Although there are many types of geometry, school mathematics is devoted primarily to plane Euclidean geometry, studied both synthetically (without coordinates) and analytically (with coordinates). Euclidean geometry is characterized most importantly by the Parallel Postulate that through a point not on a given line there is exactly one parallel line. (Spherical geometry, in contrast, has no parallel lines.)

During high school, students begin to formalize their geometry experiences from elementary and middle school, using more precise definitions and developing careful proofs. Later in college some students develop Euclidean and other geometries carefully from a small set of axioms.

The concepts of congruence, similarity, and symmetry can be understood from the perspective of geometric transformation. Fundamental are the rigid motions: translations, rotations, reflections, and combinations of these, all of which are here assumed to preserve distance and angles (and therefore shapes generally). Reflections and rotations each explain a particular type of symmetry, and the symmetries of an object offer insight into its attributes—as when the reflective symmetry of an isosceles triangle assures that its base angles are congruent.

In the approach taken here, two geometric figures are defined to be congruent if there is a sequence of rigid motions that carries one onto the other. This is the principle of superposition. For triangles, congruence means the equality of all corresponding pairs of sides and all corresponding pairs of angles. During the middle grades, through experiences drawing triangles from given conditions, students notice ways to specify enough measures in a triangle to ensure that all triangles drawn with those measures are congruent. Once these triangle congruence criteria (ASA, SAS, and SSS) are established using rigid motions, they can be used to prove theorems about triangles, quadrilaterals, and other geometric figures.

Similarity transformations (rigid motions followed by dilations) define similarity in the same way that rigid motions define congruence, thereby formalizing the similarity ideas of “same shape” and “scale factor” developed in the middle grades. These transformations lead to the criterion for triangle similarity that two pairs of corresponding angles are congruent.

The definitions of sine, cosine, and tangent for acute angles are founded on right triangles and similarity, and, with the Pythagorean Theorem, are fundamental in many real-world and theoretical situations. The Pythagorean Theorem is generalized to non-right triangles by the Law of Cosines. Together, the Laws of Sines and Cosines embody the triangle congruence criteria for the cases where three pieces of information suffice to completely solve a triangle. Furthermore, these laws yield two possible solutions in the ambiguous case, illustrating that Side-Side-Angle is not a congruence criterion.

Analytic geometry connects algebra and geometry, resulting in powerful methods of analysis and problem solving. Just as the number line associates numbers with locations in one dimension, a pair of perpendicular axes associates pairs of numbers with locations in two dimensions. This correspondence between numerical coordinates and geometric points allows methods from algebra to be applied to geometry and vice versa. The solution set of an equation becomes a geometric curve, making visualization a tool for doing and understanding algebra. Geometric shapes can be described by equations, making algebraic manipulation into a tool for geometric understanding, modeling, and proof. Geometric transformations of the graphs of equations correspond to algebraic changes in their equations.

Dynamic geometry environments provide students with experimental and modeling tools that allow them to investigate geometric phenomena in much the same way as computer algebra systems allow them to experiment with algebraic phenomena.

Connections to Equations. The correspondence between numerical coordinates and geometric points allows methods from algebra to be applied to geometry and vice versa. The solution set of an equation becomes a geometric curve, making visualization a tool for doing and understanding algebra. Geometric shapes can be described by equations, making algebraic manipulation into a tool for geometric understanding, modeling, and proof.

Geometry Overview

Congruence

- Experiment with transformations in the plane.
- Understand congruence in terms of rigid motions.
- Prove geometric theorems.
- Make geometric constructions.

Similarity, Right Triangles, and Trigonometry

- Understand similarity in terms of similarity transformations.
- Prove theorems involving similarity.
- Define trigonometric ratios and solve problems involving right triangles.
- Apply trigonometry to general triangles.

Circles

- Understand and apply theorems about circles.
- Find arc lengths and areas of sectors of circles.

Expressing Geometric Properties with Equations

- Translate between the geometric description and the equation for a conic section.
- Use coordinates to prove simple geometric theorems algebraically.

Geometric Measurement and Dimension

- Explain volume formulas and use them to solve problems.
- Visualize relationships between two-dimensional and three-dimensional objects.

Modeling with Geometry

- Apply geometric concepts in modeling situations.

Mathematical Practices

1. Make sense of problems and persevere in solving them.
2. Reason abstractly and quantitatively.
3. Construct viable arguments and critique the reasoning of others.
4. Model with mathematics.
5. Use appropriate tools strategically.
6. Attend to precision.
7. Look for and make use of structure.
8. Look for and express regularity in repeated reasoning.

Congruence **G-CO**

Experiment with transformations in the plane.

1. Know precise definitions of angle, circle, perpendicular line, parallel line, and line segment, based on the undefined notions of point, line, distance along a line, and distance around a circular arc.
2. Represent transformations in the plane using, e.g., transparencies and geometry software; describe transformations as functions that take points in the plane as inputs and give other points as outputs. Compare transformations that preserve distance and angle to those that do not (e.g., translation versus horizontal stretch).
3. Given a rectangle, parallelogram, trapezoid, or regular polygon, describe the rotations and reflections that carry it onto itself.
4. Develop definitions of rotations, reflections, and translations in terms of angles, circles, perpendicular lines, parallel lines, and line segments.
5. Given a geometric figure and a rotation, reflection, or translation, draw the transformed figure using, e.g., graph paper, tracing paper, or geometry software. Specify a sequence of transformations that will carry a given figure onto another.

Understand congruence in terms of rigid motions.

6. Use geometric descriptions of rigid motions to transform figures and to predict the effect of a given rigid motion on a given figure; given two figures, use the definition of congruence in terms of rigid motions to decide if they are congruent.
7. Use the definition of congruence in terms of rigid motions to show that two triangles are congruent if and only if corresponding pairs of sides and corresponding pairs of angles are congruent.
8. Explain how the criteria for triangle congruence (ASA, SAS, and SSS) follow from the definition of congruence in terms of rigid motions.

Prove geometric theorems.

9. Prove theorems about lines and angles. *Theorems include: vertical angles are congruent; when a transversal crosses parallel lines, alternate interior angles are congruent and corresponding angles are congruent; points on a perpendicular bisector of a line segment are exactly those equidistant from the segment's endpoints.*
10. Prove theorems about triangles. *Theorems include: measures of interior angles of a triangle sum to 180°; base angles of isosceles triangles are congruent; the segment joining midpoints of two sides of a triangle is parallel to the third side and half the length; the medians of a triangle meet at a point.*
11. Prove theorems about parallelograms. *Theorems include: opposite sides are congruent, opposite angles are congruent, the diagonals of a parallelogram bisect each other, and conversely, rectangles are parallelograms with congruent diagonals.*

    MA.11a. Prove theorems about polygons. *Theorems include: measures of interior and exterior angles, propoerties of inscribed polygons.*

Make geometric constructions.

12. Make formal geometric constructions with a variety of tools and methods (compass and straightedge, string, reflective devices, paper folding, dynamic geometric software, etc.). *Copying a segment; copying an angle; bisecting a segment; bisecting an angle; constructing perpendicular lines, including the perpendicular bisector of a line segment; and constructing a line parallel to a given line through a point not on the line.*
13. Construct an equilateral triangle, a square, and a regular hexagon inscribed in a circle.

Similarity, Right Triangles, and Trigonometry **G-SRT**

Understand similarity in terms of similarity transformations.

1. Verify experimentally the properties of dilations given by a center and a scale factor:
    a. A dilation takes a line not passing through the center of the dilation to a parallel line, and leaves a line passing through the center unchanged.
    b. The dilation of a line segment is longer or shorter in the ratio given by the scale factor.

2. Given two figures, use the definition of similarity in terms of similarity transformations to decide if they are similar; explain using similarity transformations the meaning of similarity for triangles as the equality of all corresponding pairs of angles and the proportionality of all corresponding pairs of sides.
3. Use the properties of similarity transformations to establish the AA criterion for two triangles to be similar.

Prove theorems involving similarity.

4. Prove theorems about triangles. *Theorems include: a line parallel to one side of a triangle divides the other two proportionally, and conversely; the Pythagorean Theorem proved using triangle similarity.*
5. Use congruence and similarity criteria for triangles to solve problems and to prove relationships in geometric figures.

Define trigonometric ratios and solve problems involving right triangles.

6. Understand that by similarity, side ratios in right triangles are properties of the angles in the triangle, leading to definitions of trigonometric ratios for acute angles.
7. Explain and use the relationship between the sine and cosine of complementary angles.
8. Use trigonometric ratios and the Pythagorean Theorem to solve right triangles in applied problems.★

Apply trigonometry to general triangles.

9. (+) Derive the formula $A = ½ ab \sin(C)$ for the area of a triangle by drawing an auxiliary line from a vertex perpendicular to the opposite side.
10. (+) Prove the Laws of Sines and Cosines and use them to solve problems.
11. (+) Understand and apply the Law of Sines and the Law of Cosines to find unknown measurements in right and non-right triangles (e.g., surveying problems, resultant forces).

Circles G-C

Understand and apply theorems about circles.

1. Prove that all circles are similar.
2. Identify and describe relationships among inscribed angles, radii, and chords. *Include the relationship between central, inscribed, and circumscribed angles; inscribed angles on a diameter are right angles; the radius of a circle is perpendicular to the tangent where the radius intersects the circle.*
3. Construct the inscribed and circumscribed circles of a triangle, and prove properties of angles for a quadrilateral inscribed in a circle.

   MA.3a. Derive the formula for the relationship between the number of sides and sums of the interior and sums of the exterior angles of polygons and apply to the solutions of mathematical and contextual problems.
4. (+) Construct a tangent line from a point outside a given circle to the circle.

Find arc lengths and areas of sectors of circles.

5. Derive using similarity the fact that the length of the arc intercepted by an angle is proportional to the radius, and define the radian measure of the angle as the constant of proportionality; derive the formula for the area of a sector.

Expressing Geometric Properties with Equations G-GPE

Translate between the geometric description and the equation for a conic section.

1. Derive the equation of a circle of given center and radius using the Pythagorean Theorem; complete the square to find the center and radius of a circle given by an equation.
2. Derive the equation of a parabola given a focus and directrix.
3. (+) Derive the equations of ellipses and hyperbolas given the foci, using the fact that the sum or difference of distances from the foci is constant.

   MA.3a (+) Use equations and graphs of conic sections to model real-world problems.

Use coordinates to prove simple geometric theorems algebraically.

4. Use coordinates to prove simple geometric theorems algebraically. *For example, prove or disprove that a figure defined by four given points in the coordinate plane is a rectangle; prove or disprove that the point (1, √3) lies on the circle centered at the origin and containing the point (0, 2).*
5. Prove the slope criteria for parallel and perpendicular lines and use them to solve geometric problems (e.g., find the equation of a line parallel or perpendicular to a given line that passes through a given point).
6. Find the point on a directed line segment between two given points that partitions the segment in a given ratio.
7. Use coordinates to compute perimeters of polygons and areas of triangles and rectangles, e.g., using the distance formula. ★

Geometric Measurement and Dimension **G-GMD**

Explain volume formulas and use them to solve problems.

1. Give an informal argument for the formulas for the circumference of a circle, area of a circle, volume of a cylinder, pyramid, and cone. *Use dissection arguments, Cavalieri's principle, and informal limit arguments.*
2. (+) Give an informal argument using Cavalieri's principle for the formulas for the volume of a sphere and other solid figures.
3. Use volume formulas for cylinders, pyramids, cones, and spheres to solve problems. ★

Visualize relationships between two-dimensional and three-dimensional objects.

4. Identify the shapes of two-dimensional cross-sections of three-dimensional objects, and identify three-dimensional objects generated by rotations of two-dimensional objects.

Modeling with Geometry★ **G-MG**

Apply geometric concepts in modeling situations.

1. Use geometric shapes, their measures, and their properties to describe objects (e.g., modeling a tree trunk or a human torso as a cylinder). ★
2. Apply concepts of density based on area and volume in modeling situations (e.g., persons per square mile, BTUs per cubic foot). ★
3. Apply geometric methods to solve design problems (e.g., designing an object or structure to satisfy physical constraints or minimize cost; working with typographic grid systems based on ratios). ★

MA.4. Use dimensional analysis for unit conversions to confirm that expressions and equations make sense.

Conceptual Category: Statistics and Probability★

Decisions or predictions are often based on data—numbers in context. These decisions or predictions would be easy if the data always sent a clear message, but the message is often obscured by variability. Statistics provides tools for describing variability in data and for making informed decisions that take it into account.

Data are gathered, displayed, summarized, examined, and interpreted to discover patterns and deviations from patterns. Quantitative data can be described in terms of key characteristics: measures of shape, center, and spread. The shape of a data distribution might be described as symmetric, skewed, flat, or bell shaped, and it might be summarized by a statistic measuring center (such as mean or median) and a statistic measuring spread (such as standard deviation or interquartile range). Different distributions can be compared numerically using these statistics or compared visually using plots. Knowledge of center and spread are not enough to describe a distribution. Which statistics to compare, which plots to use, and what the results of a comparison might mean, depend on the question to be investigated and the real-life actions to be taken.

Randomization has two important uses in drawing statistical conclusions. First, collecting data from a random sample of a population makes it possible to draw valid conclusions about the whole population, taking variability into account. Second, randomly assigning individuals to different treatments allows a fair comparison of the effectiveness of those treatments. A statistically significant outcome is one that is unlikely to be due to chance alone, and this can be evaluated only under the condition of randomness. The conditions under which data are collected are important in drawing conclusions from the data; in critically reviewing uses of statistics in public media and other reports, it is important to consider the study design, how the data were gathered, and the analyses employed as well as the data summaries and the conclusions drawn.

Random processes can be described mathematically by using a probability model: a list or description of the possible outcomes (the sample space), each of which is assigned a probability. In situations such as flipping a coin, rolling a number cube, or drawing a card, it might be reasonable to assume various outcomes are equally likely. In a probability model, sample points represent outcomes and combine to make up events; probabilities of events can be computed by applying the Addition and Multiplication Rules. Interpreting these probabilities relies on an understanding of independence and conditional probability, which can be approached through the analysis of two-way tables.

Technology plays an important role in statistics and probability by making it possible to generate plots, regression functions, and correlation coefficients, and to simulate many possible outcomes in a short amount of time.

Connections to Functions and Modeling. Functions may be used to describe data; if the data suggest a linear relationship, the relationship can be modeled with a regression line, and its strength and direction can be expressed through a correlation coefficient.

★ Specific modeling standards appear through out the high school standards indicated by a star symbol (★) The star symbol appearing on the cluster heading should be understood to indicate that all standards in that cluster are modeling standards.

Statistics and Probability Overview

Interpreting Categorical and Quantitative Data

- Summarize, represent, and interpret data on a single count or measurement variable.
- Summarize, represent, and interpret data on two categorical and quantitative variables.
- Interpret linear models.

Making Inferences and Justifying Conclusions

- Understand and evaluate random processes underlying statistical experiments.
- Make inferences and justify conclusions from sample surveys, experiments and observational studies.

Conditional Probability and the Rules of Probability

- Understand independence and conditional probability and use them to interpret data.
- Use the rules of probability to compute probabilities of compound events in a uniform probability model.

Using Probability to Make Decisions

- Calculate expected values and use them to solve problems.
- Use probability to evaluate outcomes of decisions.

Mathematical Practices

1. Make sense of problems and persevere in solving them.
2. Reason abstractly and quantitatively.
3. Construct viable arguments and critique the reasoning of others.
4. Model with mathematics.
5. Use appropriate tools strategically.
6. Attend to precision.
7. Look for and make use of structure.
8. Look for and express regularity in repeated reasoning.

Interpreting Categorical and Quantitative Data★ **S-ID**

Summarize, represent, and interpret data on a single count or measurement variable. ★

1. Represent data with plots on the real number line (dot plots, histograms, and box plots). ★
2. Use statistics appropriate to the shape of the data distribution to compare center (median, mean) and spread (interquartile range, standard deviation) of two or more different data sets. ★
3. Interpret differences in shape, center, and spread in the context of the data sets, accounting for possible effects of extreme data points (outliers). ★
4. Use the mean and standard deviation of a data set to fit it to a normal distribution and to estimate population percentages. Recognize that there are data sets for which such a procedure is not appropriate. Use calculators, spreadsheets, and tables to estimate areas under the normal curve. ★

Summarize, represent, and interpret data on two categorical and quantitative variables. ★

5. Summarize categorical data for two categories in two-way frequency tables. Interpret relative frequencies in the context of the data (including joint, marginal, and conditional relative frequencies). Recognize possible associations and trends in the data. ★
6. Represent data on two quantitative variables on a scatter plot, and describe how the variables are related. ★
   a. Fit a function to the data; use functions fitted to data to solve problems in the context of the data. *Use given functions or choose a function suggested by the context. Emphasize linear, quadratic, and exponential models.*
   b. Informally assess the fit of a function by plotting and analyzing residuals.
   c. Fit a linear function for a scatter plot that suggests a linear association.

Interpret linear models. ★

7. Interpret the slope (rate of change) and the intercept (constant term) of a linear model in the context of the data. ★
8. Compute (using technology) and interpret the correlation coefficient of a linear fit. ★
9. Distinguish between correlation and causation. ★

Making Inferences and Justifying Conclusions★ **S-IC**

Understand and evaluate random processes underlying statistical experiments. ★

1. Understand statistics as a process for making inferences to be made about population parameters based on a random sample from that population. ★
2. Decide if a specified model is consistent with results from a given data-generating process, e.g., using simulation. *For example, a model says a spinning coin falls heads up with probability 0.5. Would a result of 5 tails in a row cause you to question the model?* ★

Make inferences and justify conclusions from sample surveys, experiments, and observational studies.★

3. Recognize the purposes of and differences among sample surveys, experiments, and observational studies; explain how randomization relates to each. ★
4. Use data from a sample survey to estimate a population mean or proportion; develop a margin of error through the use of simulation models for random sampling. ★
5. Use data from a randomized experiment to compare two treatments; use simulations to decide if differences between parameters are significant. ★
6. Evaluate reports based on data. ★

★ Specific modeling standards appear through out the high school standards indicated by a star symbol (★) The star symbol appearing on the cluster heading should be understood to indicate that all standards in that cluster are modeling standards.

Conditional Probability and the Rules of Probability★ **S-CP**

Understand independence and conditional probability and use them to interpret data. ★

1. Describe events as subsets of a sample space (the set of outcomes) using characteristics (or categories) of the outcomes, or as unions, intersections, or complements of other events ("or," "and," "not"). ★
2. Understand that two events *A* and *B* are independent if the probability of *A* and *B* occurring together is the product of their probabilities, and use this characterization to determine if they are independent. ★
3. Understand the conditional probability of *A* given *B* as *P*(*A* and *B*)/*P*(*B*), and interpret independence of *A* and *B* as saying that the conditional probability of *A* given *B* is the same as the probability of *A*, and the conditional probability of *B* given *A* is the same as the probability of *B*. ★
4. Construct and interpret two-way frequency tables of data when two categories are associated with each object being classified. Use the two-way table as a sample space to decide if events are independent and to approximate conditional probabilities. *For example, collect data from a random sample of students in your school on their favorite subject among math, science, and English. Estimate the probability that a randomly selected student from your school will favor science given that the student is in tenth grade. Do the same for other subjects and compare the results.* ★
5. Recognize and explain the concepts of conditional probability and independence in everyday language and everyday situations. *For example, compare the chance of having lung cancer if you are a smoker with the chance of being a smoker if you have lung cancer.* ★

Use the rules of probability to compute probabilities of compound events in a uniform probability model. ★

6. Find the conditional probability of *A* given *B* as the fraction of *B*'s outcomes that also belong to *A*, and interpret the answer in terms of the model. ★
7. Apply the Addition Rule, $P(A \text{ or } B) = P(A) + P(B) – P(A \text{ and } B)$, and interpret the answer in terms of the model. ★
8. (+) Apply the general Multiplication Rule in a uniform probability model, $P(A \text{ and } B) = P(A)P(B|A) = P(B)P(A|B)$, and interpret the answer in terms of the model. ★
9. (+) Use permutations and combinations to compute probabilities of compound events and solve problems. ★

Using Probability to Make Decisions★ **S-MD**

Calculate expected values and use them to solve problems. ★

1. (+) Define a random variable for a quantity of interest by assigning a numerical value to each event in a sample space; graph the corresponding probability distribution using the same graphical displays as for data distributions. ★
2. (+) Calculate the expected value of a random variable; interpret it as the mean of the probability distribution. ★
3. (+) Develop a probability distribution for a random variable defined for a sample space in which theoretical probabilities can be calculated; find the expected value. *For example, find the theoretical probability distribution for the number of correct answers obtained by guessing on all five questions of a multiple-choice test where each question has four choices, and find the expected grade under various grading schemes.* ★
4. (+) Develop a probability distribution for a random variable defined for a sample space in which probabilities are assigned empirically; find the expected value. *For example, find a current data distribution on the number of TV sets per household in the United States, and calculate the expected number of sets per household. How many TV sets would you expect to find in 100 randomly selected households?* ★

★ Specific modeling standards appear through out the high school standards indicated by a star symbol (★) The star symbol appearing on the cluster heading should be understood to indicate that all standards in that cluster are modeling standards.

Use probability to evaluate outcomes of decisions. ⋆

5. (+) Weigh the possible outcomes of a decision by assigning probabilities to payoff values and finding expected values. ⋆
    a. Find the expected payoff for a game of chance. *For example, find the expected winnings from a state lottery ticket or a game at a fast-food restaurant.*
    b. Evaluate and compare strategies on the basis of expected values. *For example, compare a high-deductible versus a low-deductible automobile insurance policy using various, but reasonable, chances of having a minor or a major accident.*
6. (+) Use probabilities to make fair decisions (e.g., drawing by lots, using a random number generator). ⋆
7. (+) Analyze decisions and strategies using probability concepts (e.g., product testing, medical testing, pulling a hockey goalie at the end of a game). ⋆

High School Pathways and Courses

Transition from Grade 8 to Algebra I or Mathematics I

The pre-kindergarten to grade 8 standards present a coherent progression of concepts and skills that will prepare students for Algebra I or Mathematics I. Students will need to master the grades 6-8 standards in order to be prepared for the model Algebra I or Mathematics I course presented in this document. Some students may master the 2011 grade 8 standards earlier than grade 8 which would enable these students to take the model high school Algebra I or Mathematics I course in grade 8.

The 2011 grade 8 standards are rigorous and students are expected to learn about linear relationships and equations, to begin the study of functions and compare rational and irrational numbers. In addition, the statistics presented in the grade 8 standards are more sophisticated and include connecting linear relations with the representation of bivariate data. The model Algebra I and Mathematics I courses progress from these concepts and skills and focus on quadratic and exponential functions. Thus, the 2011 model Algebra I course is a more advanced course than the Algebra I course identified in our 2000 framework. Likewise, the Mathematics I course is also designed to follow the more rigorous 2011 grade 8 standards.

Development of High School Model Pathways and Courses[29]

The 2011 grades 9-12 high school mathematics standards presented by conceptual categories provide guidance on what students are expected to learn in order to be prepared for college and careers. These standards do not indicate the sequence of high school courses. In Massachusetts we received requests for additional guidance about how these 9-12 standards might be configured into model high school courses and represent a smooth transition from the grades prek-8 standards.

Achieve (in partnership with the Common Core writing team) convened a group of experts, including state mathematics experts, teachers, mathematics faculty from two and four year institutions, mathematics teacher educators, and workforce representatives to develop Model Course Pathways in Mathematics based on the Common Core State Standards that would reflect a logical progression from the pre-K–8 standards. The Pathways, Traditional (Algebra I, Geometry, and Algebra II) and Integrated (Mathematics I, Mathematics II, and Mathematics III), are presented in the June 2010 Common Core State Standards for Mathematics *Appendix A: Designing High School Mathematics Courses Based on the Common Core State Standards for Mathematics.*

The Department of Elementary and Secondary Education convened high school teachers, higher education faculty, and business leaders to review the two model pathways and related courses, and create additional model courses for students to enter after completing either pathway. The resulting Pathways and courses were presented to the Board of Elementary and Secondary Education as the model courses to be included in the 2011 Massachusetts Mathematics Curriculum Framework.

The Pathways

All of the high school content standards (originally presented by conceptual categories) that specify the mathematics all students should study for college and career readiness[30] are included in appropriate locations within the three courses of both Pathways. Students completing the three courses that comprise the Traditional Pathway or the three courses that comprise the Integrated Pathway are prepared for additional courses in higher level math comprised of the (+) standards. There are two such advanced model courses defined in this document: Precalculus and Advanced Quantitative Reasoning.

[29] Adapted from the Common Core State Standards for Mathematics and Appendix A: Designing High School Courses based on the Common Core State Standards for Mathematics

[30] In select cases (+) standards are included in a Pathway course to maintain mathematical coherence.

The Traditional Pathway reflects the approach typically seen in the U.S. consisting of two algebra courses and a geometry course, with some data, probability and statistics included in each course. The Integrated Pathway reflects the approach typically seen internationally consisting of a sequence of three courses, each of which includes number, algebra, geometry, probability and statistics.

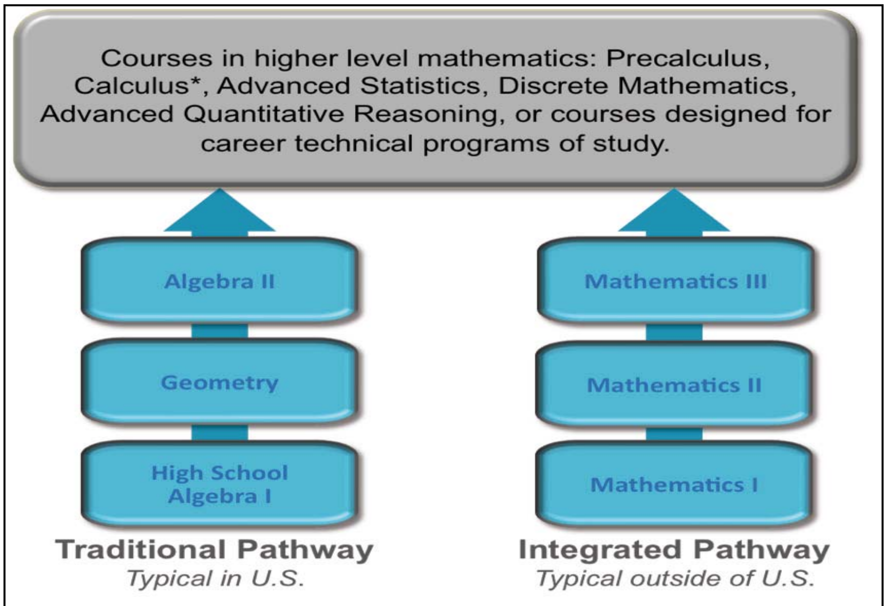


Illustration from *Appendix A: Designing High School Mathematics Courses Based on the Common Core State Standards.*

Each model course delineates the mathematics standards to be covered in a course; they are not prescriptions for curriculum or pedagogy. Additional work will be needed to create coherent instructional programs that help students achieve these standards. While the Pathways and model courses organize the Standards for Mathematical Content into model pathways to college and career readiness, the content standards must also be connected to the Standards for Mathematical Practice to ensure that the skills needed for later success are developed.

How to Read the Model High School Courses

Conceptual Category **Domain** **Cluster Heading** **Code**

Number and Quantity
Quantities★ **N.Q**
Reason quantitatively and use units to solve problems.
1. Use units as a way to understand problems and to guide the solution of multi-step problems; choose and interpret units consistently in formulas; choose and interpret the scale and the origin in graphs and data displays.*
2. Define appropriate quantities for the purpose of descriptive modeling.★
3. Choose a level of accuracy appropriate to limitations on measurement when reporting quantities.★
MA.9-12.N.Q.3a Describe the effects of approximate error in measurement and rounding on

Massachusetts Additional Standard **★Modeling standards**

The format for the courses follows that of the pre-K – 8 grade-level standards. Each course begins with an introduction and identifies the Conceptual Category, Domain, and Cluster Heading. The introduction, domain and cluster headings help to illustrate the relationships between the standards, and are integral parts of the course. The information contained in these organizing tools should be viewed as important as the standards when understanding the expectations for the students.

Footnotes

It is important to note that some standards are repeated in two or more courses within a Pathway. Footnotes have been included in the courses in order to clarify what aspect(s) of a standard is appropriate for each course. The footnotes are an important part of the standard for each course. For example, “N.RN.1 Explain how the definition of the meaning of rational exponents follows from extending the properties of integer exponents to those values, allowing for a notation for radicals in terms of rational exponents” is included in the Algebra I and Algebra II courses. The footnote in Algebra I, “Introduce rational exponents for square and cube roots in Algebra I and expand to include other rational exponents in Algebra II” indicates that rational exponents should be limited to square and cube roots. The footnote in Algebra II, “Expand understanding of rational exponents to all uses” indicates that other applications of rational exponents should be included in Algebra II.

Importance of Modeling in High School

Modeling (indicated by a ★ in the standards) is defined as both a *conceptual category* for high school mathematics and a *mathematical practice* and is an important avenue for motivating students to study mathematics, for building their understanding of mathematics, and for preparing them for future success. Development of the pathways into instructional programs will require careful attention to modeling and the mathematical practices. Assessments based on these pathways should reflect both the content and mathematical practice standards.

Traditional Pathway: High School Algebra I[31]

The fundamental purpose of Algebra I is to formalize and extend the mathematics that students learned in the middle grades. The course contains standards from the High School Conceptual Categories, many of which encompass types of expressions and functions that are beyond the scope of Algebra I. It is important to note, therefore, that the scope of Algebra I is limited to linear, quadratic, and exponential expressions and functions as well as some work with absolute value, step, and functions that are piecewise-defined; therefore, although a standard may include references to logarithms or trigonometry, those functions should not be included in the work of Algebra I students, rather they will be addressed in Algebra II. Reminders of this limitation are included as footnotes where appropriate in the Algebra I standards.

Algebra I has four critical areas that deepen and extend understanding of linear and exponential relationships by contrasting them with each other and by applying linear models to data that exhibit a linear trend. Students engage in methods for analyzing, solving and using quadratic functions. The Mathematical Practice Standards apply throughout the course and, together with the content standards, prescribe that students experience mathematics as a coherent, useful, and logical subject that makes use of their ability to make sense of problem situations.

Critical Area 1: By the end of eighth grade, students have learned to solve linear equations in one variable and have applied graphical and algebraic methods to analyze and solve systems of linear equations in two variables. In this course students analyze and explain the process of solving an equation and justify the process used in solving a system of equations. Students develop fluency writing, interpreting, and translating between various forms of linear equations and inequalities, and using them to solve problems. They master the solution of linear equations and apply related solution techniques and the laws of exponents to the creation and solution of simple exponential equations.

Critical Area 2: In earlier grades, students define, evaluate, and compare functions, and use them to model relationships between quantities. Students will learn function notation and develop the concepts of domain and range. They explore many examples of functions paying particular attention to linear, quadratic, and exponential functions, including sequences; they interpret functions given graphically, numerically, symbolically, and verbally, translate between representations, and understand the limitations of various representations. Students build on and extend their understanding of integer exponents to consider exponential functions. They compare and contrast linear and exponential functions, distinguishing between additive and multiplicative change. Students explore systems of equations and inequalities, and they find and interpret their solutions. They interpret arithmetic sequences as linear functions and geometric sequences as exponential functions.

Critical Area 3: Students extend the laws of exponents to rational exponents and apply this new understanding of number; they strengthen their ability to see structure in and create quadratic and exponential expressions. They create and solve equations, inequalities, and systems of equations involving quadratic expressions. Students become facile with algebraic manipulation, including rearranging and collecting terms, factoring, identifying and canceling common factors in rational expressions. Students consider quadratic functions, comparing the key characteristics of quadratic functions to those of linear and exponential functions. They select from among these functions to model phenomena. Students learn to anticipate the graph of a quadratic function by interpreting various forms of quadratic expressions. In particular, they identify the real solutions of a quadratic equation as the zeros of a related quadratic function. Students expand their experience with functions to include more specialized functions—absolute value, step, and those that are piecewise-defined.

Critical Area 4: Building upon prior students' prior experiences with data, students explore a more formal means of assessing how a model fits data. Students use regression techniques to describe approximately linear relationships between quantities. They use graphical representations and knowledge of the context to make judgments about the appropriateness of linear models. With linear models, they look at residuals to analyze the goodness of fit.

[31] **Adapted from *Appendix A: Designing High School Mathematics Course Based on the Common Core State Standards***

High School Algebra I Overview

Number and Quantity

The Real Number System
- Extend the properties of exponents to rational exponents.
- Use properties of rational and irrational numbers.

Quantity
- Reason quantitatively and use units to solve problems.

Algebra

Seeing Structure in Expressions
- Interpret the structure of expressions
- Write expressions in equivalent forms to solve problems

Arithmetic with Polynomials and Rational Expressions
- Perform arithmetic operations on polynomials.

Creating Equations
- Create equations that describe numbers or relationships

Reasoning with Equations and Inequalities
- Understand solving equations as a process of reasoning and explain the reasoning
- Solve equations and inequalities in one variable
- Solve systems of equations
- Represent and solve equations and inequalities graphically

Functions

Interpreting Functions
- Understand the concept of a function and use function notation
- Interpret functions that arise in applications in terms of a context
- Analyze functions using different representations

Building Functions
- Build a function that models a relationship between two quantities.
- Build new functions from existing functions

Linear, Quadratic, and Exponential Models
- Construct and compare linear, quadratic and exponential models and solve problems
- Interpret expressions for functions in terms of the situation they model

Mathematical Practices
1. Make sense of problems and persevere in solving them.
2. Reason abstractly and quantitatively.
3. Construct viable arguments and critique the reasoning of others.
4. Model with mathematics.
5. Use appropriate tools strategically.
6. Attend to precision.
7. Look for and make use of structure.
8. Look for and express regularity in repeated reasoning.

Statistics and Probability

Interpreting Categorical and Quantitative Data
- Summarize, represent, and interpret data on a single count or measurement variable
- Summarize, represent, and interpret data on two categorical and quantitative variables
- Interpret linear models

Number and Quantity

The Real Number System **N.RN**

Extend the properties of exponents to rational exponents[32].

1. Explain how the definition of the meaning of rational exponents follows from extending the properties of integer exponents to those values, allowing for a notation for radicals in terms of rational exponents. *For example, we define $5^{1/3}$ to be the cube root of 5 because we want $(5^{1/3})^3 = 5^{(1/3)\times 3}$ to hold, so $(5^{1/3})^3$ must equal 5.*

2. Rewrite expressions involving radicals and rational exponents using the properties of exponents.

Use properties of rational and irrational numbers.

3. Explain why the sum or product of rational numbers is rational; that the sum of a rational number and an irrational number is irrational; and that the product of a nonzero rational number and an irrational number is irrational.

Quantities★ **N.Q**

Reason quantitatively and use units to solve problems.

1. Use units as a way to understand problems and to guide the solution of multi-step problems; choose and interpret units consistently in formulas; choose and interpret the scale and the origin in graphs and data displays.★

2. Define appropriate quantities for the purpose of descriptive modeling. ★

3. Choose a level of accuracy appropriate to limitations on measurement when reporting quantities. ★

MA.3a Describe the effects of approximate error in measurement and rounding on measurements and on computed values from measurements. Identify significant figures in recorded measures and computed values based on the context given the precision of the tools used to measure. ★

Algebra

Seeing Structure in Expressions **A.SSE**

Interpret the structure of expressions[33]

1. Interpret expressions that represent a quantity in terms of its context. ★
   a. Interpret parts of an expression, such as terms, factors, and coefficients. ★
   b. Interpret complicated expressions by viewing one or more of their parts as a single entity. *For example, interpret $P(1+r)^n$ as the product of P and a factor not depending on P.**
2. Use the structure of an expression to identify ways to rewrite it. *For example, see $x^4 - y^4$ as $(x^2)^2 - (y^2)^2$, thus recognizing it as a difference of squares that can be factored as $(x^2 - y^2)(x^2 + y^2)$.*

Write expressions in equivalent forms to solve problems

3. Choose and produce an equivalent form of an expression to reveal and explain properties of the quantity represented by the expression. ★
   a. Factor a quadratic expression to reveal the zeros of the function it defines. ★
   b. Complete the square in a quadratic expression to reveal the maximum or minimum value of the function it defines. ★
   c. Use the properties of exponents to transform expressions for exponential functions. *For example the expression 1.15^t can be rewritten as $(1.15^{1/12})^{12t} \approx 1.012^{12t}$ to reveal the approximate equivalent monthly interest rate if the annual rate is 15%.*★

---

[32] Introduce rational exponents involving square and cube roots in Algebra I and continue with other rational exponents in Algebra II

★ Specific modeling standards appear through out the high school standards indicated by a star symbol (★). The star symbol appearing on the cluster heading should be understood to indicate that all standards in that cluster are modeling standards.

[33] Algebra I is limited to linear, quadratic, and exponential expressions

Arithmetic with Polynomials and Rational Functions **A.APR**

Perform arithmetic operations on polynomials[34]

1. Understand that polynomials form a system analogous to the integers, namely, they are closed under the operations of addition, subtraction, and multiplication; add, subtract, and multiply polynomials.

Creating Equations[35]★ **A.CED**

Create equations that describe numbers or relationships

1. Create equations and inequalities in one variable and use them to solve problems. Include equations arising from linear and quadratic functions, and simple rational and exponential functions. ★
2. Create equations in two or more variables to represent relationships between quantities; graph equations on coordinate axes with labels and scales. ★
3. Represent constraints by equations or inequalities[36], and by systems of equations and/or inequalities, and interpret solutions as viable or non-viable options in a modeling context. *For example, represent inequalities describing nutritional and cost constraints on combinations of different foods.* ★
4. Rearrange formulas to highlight a quantity of interest, using the same reasoning as in solving equations. *For example, rearrange Ohm's law V = IR to highlight resistance R..* ★

Reasoning with Equations and Inequalities **A.REI**

Understand solving equations as a process of reasoning and explain the reasoning

1. Explain each step in solving a simple equation as following from the equality of numbers asserted at the previous step, starting from the assumption that the original equation has a solution. Construct a viable argument to justify a solution method.

Solve equations and inequalities in one variable

3. Solve linear equations and inequalities in one variable, including equations with coefficients represented by letters.
   MA.3a Solve linear equations and inequalities in one variable involving absolute value.
4. Solve quadratic equations in one variable.
   a. Use the method of completing the square to transform any quadratic equation in x into an equation of the form $(x – p)^2 = q$ that has the same solutions. Derive the quadratic formula from this form.
   b. Solve quadratic equations by inspection (e.g., for $x^2 = 49$), taking square roots, completing the square, the quadratic formula and factoring, as appropriate to the initial form of the equation. Recognize when the quadratic formula gives complex solutions[37] and write them as $a \pm bi$ for real numbers a and b.

   MA.4c Demonstrate an understanding of the equivalence of factoring, completing the square, or using the quadratic formula to solve quadratic equations.

Solve systems of equations

5. Prove that, given a system of two equations in two variables, replacing one equation by the sum of that equation and a multiple of the other produces a system with the same solutions.
6. Solve systems of linear equations exactly and approximately (e.g., with graphs), focusing on pairs of linear equations in two variables.

---

[34] For Algebra I, focus on adding and multiplying polynomial expressions, factor or expand polynomial expressions to identify and collect like terms, apply the distributive property.

[35] Create linear, quadratic, and exponential (with integer domain) equations in Algebra I

[36] Equations and inequalities in this standard should be limited to linear.

[37] It is sufficient in Algebra I to recognize when roots are not real; writing complex roots are included in Algebra II

7. Solve a simple system consisting of a linear equation and a quadratic[38] equation in two variables algebraically and graphically. *For example, find the points of intersection between the line* $y = -3x$ *and the circle* $x^2 + y^2 = 3$.

Represent and solve equations and inequalities[39] graphically

10. Understand that the graph of an equation in two variables is the set of all its solutions plotted in the coordinate plane, often forming a curve (which could be a line).
11. Explain why the x-coordinates of the points where the graphs of the equations $y = f(x)$ and $y = g(x)$ intersect are the solutions of the equation $f(x) = g(x)$; find the solutions approximately, e.g., using technology to graph the functions, make tables of values, or find successive approximations. Include cases where $f(x)$ and/or $g(x)$ are linear, polynomial, rational, absolute value, exponential, and logarithmic functions. ★
12. Graph the solutions to a linear inequality in two variables as a half-plane (excluding the boundary in the case of a strict inequality), and graph the solution set to a system of linear inequalities in two variables as the intersection of the corresponding half-planes.

Functions

Interpreting Functions F.IF

Understand the concept of a function and use function notation

1. Understand that a function from one set (called the domain) to another set (called the range) assigns to each element of the domain exactly one element of the range. If f is a function and x is an element of its domain, then $f(x)$ denotes the output of f corresponding to the input x. The graph of f is the graph of the equation $y = f(x)$.
2. Use function notation, evaluate functions for inputs in their domains, and interpret statements that use function notation in terms of a context.
3. Recognize that sequences are functions, sometimes defined recursively, whose domain is a subset of the integers. *For example, the Fibonacci sequence is defined recursively by* $f(0) = f(1) = 1$, $f(n+1) = f(n) + f(n-1)$ *for* $n \geq 1$.

Interpret functions[40] that arise in applications in terms of the context

4. For a function that models a relationship between two quantities, interpret key features of graphs and tables in terms of the quantities, and sketch graphs showing key features given a verbal description of the relationship. *Key features include: intercepts; intervals where the function is increasing, decreasing, positive, or negative; relative maximums and minimums; symmetries; end behavior; and periodicity.* ★
5. Relate the domain of a function to its graph and, where applicable, to the quantitative relationship it describes. *For example, if the function h(n) gives the number of person-hours it takes to assemble n engines in a factory, then the positive integers would be an appropriate domain for the function.* ★
6. Calculate and interpret the average rate of change of a function (presented symbolically or as a table) over a specified interval. Estimate the rate of change from a graph. ★

Analyze functions[41] using different representations

7. Graph functions expressed symbolically and show key features of the graph, by hand in simple cases and using technology for more complicated cases. ★
   a. Graph linear and quadratic functions and show intercepts, maxima, and minima. ★
   b. Graph square root, cube root[42], and piecewise-defined functions, including step functions and absolute value functions. ★
   e. Graph exponential and logarithmic[43] functions, showing intercepts and end behavior, and trigonometric functions, showing period, midline, and amplitude. ★[44]

---

[38] Algebra I does not include the study of conic equations; include quadratic equations typically included in Algebra I
[39] In Algebra I, functions are limited to linear, absolute value, and exponential functions for this standard
[40] Limit to interpreting linear, quadratic, and exponential functions
[41] In Algebra I, only linear, exponential, quadratic, absolute value, step, and piecewise functions are included in this cluster.
[42] Graphing square root and cube root functions is included in Algebra II

8. Write a function defined by an expression in different but equivalent forms to reveal and explain different properties of the function.
   a. Use the process of factoring and completing the square in a quadratic function to show zeros, extreme values, and symmetry of the graph, and interpret these in terms of a context.
   b. Use the properties of exponents to interpret expressions for exponential functions. *For example, identify percent rate of change in functions such as* $y = 1.02^t$, $y = (0.97)^t$, $y = (1.01)^{12t}$, $y = (1.2)^{t/10}$, *and classify them as representing exponential growth and decay.*

   MA.8c Translate between different representations of functions and relations: graphs, equations point sets, and tabular.
9. Compare properties of two functions each represented in a different way (algebraically, graphically, numerically in tables, or by verbal descriptions). For example, given a graph of one quadratic function and an algebraic expression for another, say which has the larger maximum.

MA.10. Given algebraic, numeric, and/or graphical representations of functions, recognize the function as polynomial, rational, logarithmic, exponential, or trigonometric.

Building Functions[45] **F.BF**

Build a function that models a relationship between two quantities★

1. Write a function that describes a relationship between two quantities. ★
   a. Determine an explicit expression, a recursive process, or steps for calculation from a context.
   b. Combine standard function types using arithmetic operations. *For example, build a function that models the temperature of a cooling body by adding a constant function to a decaying exponential, and relate these functions to the model.*★
2. Write arithmetic and geometric sequences both recursively and with an explicit formula[47], use them to model situations, and translate between the two forms.★

Build new functions from existing functions

3. Identify the effect on the graph of replacing f(x) by f(x) + k, k f(x), f(kx), and f(x + k) for specific values of k (both positive and negative); find the value of k given the graphs. Experiment with cases and illustrate an explanation of the effects on the graph using technology. *Include recognizing even and odd functions from their graphs and algebraic expressions for them.*
4. Find inverse functions.
   a. Solve an equation of the form f(x) = c for a simple function f that has an inverse and write an expression for the inverse. *For example,* $f(x) = 2x^3$ *or* $f(x) = (x+1)/(x-1)$ *for* $x \neq 1$.

Linear, Quadratic, and Exponential Models★ **F.LE**

Construct and compare linear, quadratic, and exponential models and solve problems

1. Distinguish between situations that can be modeled with linear functions and with exponential functions.★
   a. Prove that linear functions grow by equal differences over equal intervals and that exponential functions grow by equal factors over equal intervals. ★
   b. Recognize situations in which one quantity changes at a constant rate per unit interval relative to another. ★
   c. Recognize situations in which a quantity grows or decays by a constant percent rate per unit interval relative to another.

---

[43] Do not include logarithmic functions in Algebra I
[44] Showing end behavior, and trigonometric functions, showing period, midline, and amplitude are not part of Algebra I
[45] Functions are limited to linear, quadratic , and exponential in Algebra I
★ Specific modeling standards appear through out the high school standards indicated by a star symbol (★) The star symbol appearing on the cluster heading should be understood to indicate that all standards in that cluster are modeling standards.
[46] Algebra I is limited to linear, quadratic, and exponential expressions
[47] In Algebra I identify linear and exponential sequences that are defined recursively, continue the study of sequences in Algebra II

2. Construct linear and exponential functions, including arithmetic and geometric sequences, given a graph, a description of a relationship, or two input-output pairs (include reading these from a table). ★
3. Observe using graphs and tables that a quantity increasing exponentially eventually exceeds a quantity increasing linearly, quadratically, or (more generally) as a polynomial function. ★

Interpret expressions for functions in terms of the situation they model★

5. Interpret the parameters in a linear or exponential[48] function in terms of a context. ★

Statistics and Probability★ **S.ID**

Interpreting Categorical and Quantitative Data★

Summarize, represent, and interpret data on a single count or measurement variable

1. Represent data with plots on the real number line (dot plots, histograms, and box plots). ★
2. Use statistics appropriate to the shape of the data distribution to compare center (median, mean) and spread (interquartile range, standard deviation) of two or more different data sets. ★
3. Interpret differences in shape, center, and spread in the context of the data sets, accounting for possible effects of extreme data points (outliers). ★
4. Use the mean and standard deviation of a data set to fit it to a normal distribution and to estimate population percentages. Recognize that there are data sets for which such a procedure is not appropriate. Use calculators, spreadsheets, and tables to estimate areas under the normal curve. ★

Summarize, represent, and interpret data on two categorical and quantitative variables.[49] ★

5. Summarize categorical data for two categories in two-way frequency tables. Interpret relative frequencies in the context of the data (including joint, marginal, and conditional relative frequencies). Recognize possible associations and trends in the data. ★
6. Represent data on two quantitative variables on a scatter plot, and describe how the variables are related.★
   a. Fit a function to the data; use functions fitted to data to solve problems in the context of the data. Use given functions or choose a function suggested by the context. *Emphasize linear, quadratic, and exponential models.* ★
   b. Informally assess the fit of a function by plotting and analyzing residuals. ★
   c. Fit a linear function for a scatter plot that suggests a linear association.★

Interpret linear models★

7. Interpret the slope (rate of change) and the intercept (constant term) of a linear model in the context of the data. ★
8. Compute (using technology) and interpret the correlation coefficient of a linear fit. ★
9. Interpret linear models. Distinguish between correlation and causation. ★

[48] Limit exponential function to the form $f(x) = b^x + k$)
[49] Linear focus; discuss as a general principle in Algebra I

Traditional Pathway: Geometry[50]

The fundamental purpose of the Geometry course is to formalize and extend students' geometric experiences from the middle grades. Students explore more complex geometric situations and deepen their explanations of geometric relationships, presenting and hearing formal mathematical arguments. Important differences exist between this Geometry course and the historical approach taken in Geometry classes. For example, transformations are emphasized in this course. Close attention should be paid to the introductory content for the Geometry conceptual category found in the high school CCSS. The Mathematical Practice Standards apply throughout this course and, together with the content standards, prescribe that students experience mathematics as a coherent, useful, and logical subject that makes use of their ability to make sense of problem situations. The critical areas are as follows:

Critical Area 1: Students have prior experience with drawing triangles based on given measurements, performing rigid motions including translations, reflections, and rotations, and have used these to develop notions about what it means for two objects to be congruent. In this course, students establish triangle congruence criteria, based on analyses of rigid motions and formal constructions. They use triangle congruence as a familiar foundation for the development of formal proof. Students prove theorems—using a variety of formats including deductive and inductive reasoning and proof by contradiction—and solve problems about triangles, quadrilaterals, and other polygons. They apply reasoning to complete geometric constructions and explain why they work.

Critical Area 2: Students apply their earlier experience with dilations and proportional reasoning to build a formal understanding of similarity. They identify criteria for similarity of triangles, use similarity to solve problems, and apply similarity in right triangles to understand right triangle trigonometry, with particular attention to special right triangles and the Pythagorean theorem. Students develop the Laws of Sines and Cosines in order to find missing measures of general (not necessarily right) triangles, building on students' work with quadratic equations done in the first course. They are able to distinguish whether three given measures (angles or sides) define 0, 1, 2, or infinitely many triangles.

Critical Area 3: Students' experience with three-dimensional objects is extended to include informal explanations of circumference, area, and volume formulas. Additionally, students apply their knowledge of two-dimensional shapes to consider the shapes of cross-sections and the result of rotating a two-dimensional object about a line.

Critical Area 4: Building on their work with the Pythagorean theorem in 8^{th} grade to find distances, students use the rectangular coordinate system to verify geometric relationships, including properties of special triangles and quadrilaterals and slopes of parallel and perpendicular lines, which relates back to work done in the first course. Students continue their study of quadratics by connecting the geometric and algebraic definitions of the parabola.

Critical Area 5: Students prove basic theorems about circles, with particular attention to perpendicularity and inscribed angles, in order to see symmetry in circles and as an application of triangle congruence criteria. They study relationships among segments on chords, secants, and tangents as an application of similarity. In the Cartesian coordinate system, students use the distance formula to write the equation of a circle when given the radius and the coordinates of its center. Given an equation of a circle, they draw the graph in the coordinate plane, and apply techniques for solving quadratic equations, which relates back to work done in the first course, to determine intersections between lines and circles or parabolas and between two circles.

Critical Area 6: Building on probability concepts that began in the middle grades, students use the languages of set theory to expand their ability to compute and interpret theoretical and experimental probabilities for compound events, attending to mutually exclusive events, independent events, and conditional probability. Students should make use of geometric probability models wherever possible. They use probability to make informed decisions.

---

[50] **Adapted from *Appendix A: Designing High School Mathematics Course Based on the Common Core State Standards,* http://www.corestandards.org/the-standards**

Geometry Overview

Number and Quantity

Quantity

- Reason quantitatively and use units to solve problems

Geometry

Congruence

- Experiment with transformations in the plane
- Understand congruence in terms of rigid motions
- Prove geometric theorems
- Make geometric constructions

Similarity, Right Triangles, and Trigonometry

- Understand similarity in terms of similarity in terms of similarity transformations.
- Prove theorems involving similarity
- Define trigonometry ratios and solve problems involving right triangles
- Apply trigonometry to general triangles

Circles

- Understand and apply theorems about circles
- Find arc lengths and area of sectors of circles

Expressing Geometric Properties with Equations

- Translate between the geometric description and the equations for a conic section
- Use coordinates to prove simple geometric theorems algebraically

Geometric Measurement and Dimension

- Explain volume formulas and use them to solve problems
- Visualize the relationship between two-dimensional and three-dimensional objects

Modeling with Geometry

- Apply geometric concepts in modeling situations

Statistics and Probability

Conditional Probability and the Rules of Probability

- Understand independence and conditional probability and use them to interpret data
- Use the rules of probability to compute probabilities of compound events in a uniform probability model

Mathematical Practices

1. Make sense of problems and persevere in solving them.
2. Reason abstractly and quantitatively.
3. Construct viable arguments and critique the reasoning of others.
4. Model with mathematics.
5. Use appropriate tools strategically.
6. Attend to precision.
7. Look for and make use of structure.
8. Look for and express regularity in repeated reasoning.

Number and Quantity **N.Q**

Quantity

Reason quantitatively and use units to solve problems★

2. Define appropriate quantities for the purpose of descriptive modeling. ★

3. Choose a level of accuracy appropriate to limitations on measurement when reporting quantities.

MA.3a. Describe the effects of approximate error in measurement and rounding on measurements and on computed values from measures. Identify significant figures in recorded measuresand computed values based on the context given and the precision of the tools used to measure. ★

Geometry

Congruence **G.CO**

Experiment with transformations in the plane

1. Know precise definitions of angle, circle, perpendicular line, parallel line, and line segment, based on the undefined notions of point, line, distance along a line, and distance around a circular arc.
2. Represent transformations in the plane using, e.g., transparencies and geometry software; describe transformations as functions that take points in the plane as inputs and give other points as outputs. Compare transformations that preserve distance and angle to those that do not (e.g., translation versus horizontal stretch).
3. Given a rectangle, parallelogram, trapezoid, or regular polygon, describe the rotations and reflections that carry it onto itself.
4. Develop definitions of rotations, reflections, and translations in terms of angles, circles, perpendicular lines, parallel lines, and line segments.
5. Given a geometric figure and a rotation, reflection, or translation, draw the transformed figure using, e.g., graph paper, tracing paper, or geometry software. Specify a sequence of transformations that will carry a given figure onto another.

Understand congruence in terms of rigid motions

6. Use geometric descriptions of rigid motions to transform figures and to predict the effect of a given rigid motion on a given figure; given two figures, use the definition of congruence in terms of rigid motions to decide if they are congruent.
7. Use the definition of congruence in terms of rigid motions to show that two triangles are congruent if and only if corresponding pairs of sides and corresponding pairs of angles are congruent.
8. Explain how the criteria for triangle congruence (ASA, SAS, and SSS) follow from the definition of congruence in terms of rigid motions.

Prove geometric theorems[51]

9. Prove theorems about lines and angles. *Theorem*[52]*s include: vertical angles are congruent; when a transversal crosses parallel lines, alternate interior angles are congruent and corresponding angles are congruent; points on a perpendicular bisector of a line segment are exactly those equidistant from the segment's endpoints.*
10. Prove theorems about triangles. *Theorems include: measures of interior angles of a triangle sum to 180 degrees; base angles of isosceles triangles are congruent; the segment joining midpoints of two sides of a triangle is parallel to the third side and half the length; the medians of a triangle meet at a point.*
11. Prove theorems about parallelograms. *Theorems include: opposite sides are congruent, opposite angles are congruent, the diagonals of a parallelogram bisect each other, and conversely, rectangles are parallelograms with congruent diagonals.*

★ Specific modeling standards appear through out the high school standards indicated by a star symbol (★) The star symbol appearing on the cluster heading should be understood to indicate that all standards in that cluster are modeling standards.

[51] Proving the converse of theorems should be included when appropriate

MA.11a. Prove theorems about polygons. *Theorems include: measures of interior and exterior angles, properties of inscribed polygons.*

Make geometric constructions

12. Make formal geometric constructions with a variety of tools and methods (compass and straightedge, string, reflective devices, paper folding, dynamic geometric software, etc.). *Copying a segment; copying an angle; bisecting a segment; bisecting an angle; constructing perpendicular lines, including the perpendicular bisector of a line segment; and constructing a line parallel to a given line through a point not on the line.*
13. Construct an equilateral triangle, a square, and a regular hexagon inscribed in a circle.

Similarity, Right Triangles, and Trigonometry G.SRT

Understand similarity in terms of similarity transformations

1. Verify experimentally the properties of dilations given by a center and a scale factor:
   a. A dilation takes a line not passing through the center of the dilation to a parallel line, and leaves a line passing through the center unchanged.
   b. The dilation of a line segment is longer or shorter in the ratio given by the scale factor.
2. Given two figures, use the definition of similarity in terms of similarity transformations to decide if they are similar; explain using similarity transformations the meaning of similarity for triangles as the equality of all corresponding pairs of angles and the proportionality of all corresponding pairs of sides.
3. Use the properties of similarity transformations to establish the AA criterion for two triangles to be similar.

Prove theorems involving similarity

4. Prove theorems about triangles. *Theorems include: a line parallel to one side of a triangle divides the other two proportionally, and conversely; the Pythagorean Theorem proved using triangle similarity.*
5. Use congruence and similarity criteria for triangles to solve problems and to prove relationships in geometric figures.

Define trigonometric ratios and solve problems involving right triangles.

6. Understand that by similarity, side ratios in right triangles are properties of the angles in the triangle, leading to definitions of trigonometric ratios for acute angles.
7. Explain and use the relationship between the sine and cosine of complementary angles.
8. Use trigonometric ratios and the Pythagorean Theorem to solve right triangles in applied problems.

Apply trigonometry to general triangles

9. (+) Derive the formula A = (1/2)ab sin(C) for the area of a triangle by drawing an auxiliary line from a vertex perpendicular to the opposite side.
10. (+) Prove the Laws of Sines and Cosines and use them to solve problems.
11. (+) Understand and apply the Law of Sines and the Law of Cosines to find unknown measurements in right and non-right triangles (e.g., surveying problems, resultant forces).

Circles G.C

Understand and apply theorems about circles

1. Prove that all circles are similar.
2. Identify and describe relationships among inscribed angles, radii, and chords. *Include the relationship between central, inscribed, and circumscribed angles; inscribed angles on a diameter are right angles; the radius of a circle is perpendicular to the tangent where the radius intersects the circle.*
3. Construct the inscribed and circumscribed circles of a triangle, and prove properties of angles for a quadrilateral inscribed in a circle.

   MA.3a. Derive the formula for the relationship between the number of sides and sums of the interior and sums of the exterior angles of polygons and apply to the solutions of mathematical and contextual problems.

4. (+) Construct a tangent line from a point outside a given circle to the circle.

Find arc lengths and areas of sectors of circles

5. Derive using similarity the fact that the length of the arc intercepted by an angle is proportional to the radius, and define the radian measure of the angle as the constant of proportionality; derive the formula for the area of a sector.

Expressing Geometric Properties with Equations G.GPE

Translate between the geometric description and the equation for a conic section

1. Derive the equation of a circle of given center and radius using the Pythagorean Theorem; complete the square to find the center and radius of a circle given by an equation.
2. Derive the equation of a parabola given a focus and a directrix.

Use coordinates to prove simple geometric theorems algebraically

4. Use coordinates to prove simple geometric theorems algebraically. *For example, prove or disprove that a figure defined by four given points in the coordinate plane is a rectangle; prove or disprove that the point (1, √3) lies on the circle centered at the origin and containing the point (0, 2).*
5. Prove the slope criteria for parallel and perpendicular lines and use them to solve geometric problems (e.g., find the equation of a line parallel or perpendicular to a given line that passes through a given point).
6. Find the point on a directed line segment between two given points that partitions the segment in a given ratio.
7. Use coordinates to compute perimeters of polygons and areas of triangles and rectangles, e.g., using the distance formula. ★

Geometric Measurement and Dimension G.GMD

Explain volume formulas and use them to solve problems

1. Give an informal argument for the formulas for the circumference of a circle, area of a circle, volume of a cylinder, pyramid, and cone. *Use dissection arguments, Cavalieri's principle, and informal limit arguments.*

2. (+) Give an informal argument using Cavalieri's principle for the formulas for the volume of a sphere and other solid figures.

3. Use volume formulas for cylinders, pyramids, cones, and spheres to solve problems.*

Visualize relationships between two-dimensional and three-dimensional objects

4. Identify the shapes of two-dimensional cross-sections of three-dimensional objects, and identify three-dimensional objects generated by rotations of two-dimensional objects.

Modeling with Geometry G.MG

Apply geometric concepts in modeling situations

1. Use geometric shapes, their measures, and their properties to describe objects (e.g., modeling a tree trunk or a human torso as a cylinder).*
2. Apply concepts of density based on area and volume in modeling situations (e.g., persons per square mile, BTUs per cubic foot).*
3. Apply geometric methods to solve design problems (e.g., designing an object or structure to satisfy physical constraints or minimize cost; working with typographic grid systems based on ratios).*

MA.4 Use dimensional analysis for unit conversion to confirm that expressions and equations make sense.

★ Specific modeling standards appear through out the high school standards indicated by a star symbol (★) The star symbol appearing on the cluster heading should be understood to indicate that all standards in that cluster are modeling standards.

Conditional Probability and the Rules of Probability★ S-CP

Understand independence and conditional probability and use them to interpret data.[53] ★

1. Describe events as subsets of a sample space (the set of outcomes) using characteristics (or categories) of the outcomes, or as unions, intersections, or complements of other events ("or," "and," "not"). ★
2. Understand that two events *A* and *B* are independent if the probability of *A* and *B* occurring together is the product of their probabilities, and use this characterization to determine if they are independent. ★
3. Understand the conditional probability of *A* given *B* as $P(A \text{ and } B)/P(B)$, and interpret independence of *A* and *B* as saying that the conditional probability of *A* given *B* is the same as the probability of *A*, and the conditional probability of *B* given *A* is the same as the probability of *B*. ★
4. Construct and interpret two-way frequency tables of data when two categories are associated with each object being classified. Use the two-way table as a sample space to decide if events are independent and to approximate conditional probabilities. *For example, collect data from a random sample of students in your school on their favorite subject among math, science, and English. Estimate the probability that a randomly selected student from your school will favor science given that the student is in tenth grade. Do the same for other subjects and compare the results.* ★
5. Recognize and explain the concepts of conditional probability and independence in everyday language and everyday situations. *For example, compare the chance of having lung cancer if you are a smoker with the chance of being a smoker if you have lung cancer.* ★

Use the rules of probability to compute probabilities of compound events in a uniform probability model.[54] ★

6. Find the conditional probability of *A* given *B* as the fraction of *B*'s outcomes that also belong to *A*, and interpret the answer in terms of the model. ★
7. Apply the Addition Rule, $P(A \text{ or } B) = P(A) + P(B) – P(A \text{ and } B)$, and interpret the answer in terms of the model. ★
8. (+) Apply the general Multiplication Rule in a uniform probability model, $P(A \text{ and } B) = P(A)P(B|A) = P(B)P(A|B)$, and interpret the answer in terms of the model. ★
9. (+) Use permutations and combinations to compute probabilities of compound events and solve problems. ★

Using Probability to Make Decisions★ S-MD

Use probability to evaluate outcomes of decisions.[55] ★

6. (+) Use probabilities to make fair decisions (e.g., drawing by lots, using a random number generator). ★
7. (+) Analyze decisions and strategies using probability concepts (e.g., product testing, medical testing, pulling a hockey goalie at the end of a game). ★

★ Specific modeling standards appear through out the high school standards indicated by a star symbol (★). The star symbol appearing on the cluster heading should be understood to indicate that all standards in that cluster are modeling standards.

[53] Link to data from simulations or experiments

[54] Introductory only

[55] Introductory only: apply the counting rules

Traditional Pathway: Algebra II[56]

Building on their work with linear, quadratic, and exponential functions, students extend their repertoire of functions to include logarithmic, polynomial, rational, and radical functions[57]. Students work closely with the expressions that define the functions are facile with algebraic manipulations of expressions, and continue to expand and hone their abilities to model situations and to solve equations, including solving quadratic equations over the set of complex numbers and solving exponential equations using the properties of logarithms. The Mathematical Practice Standards apply throughout this course and, together with the content standards, prescribe that students experience mathematics as a coherent, useful, and logical subject that makes use of their ability to make sense of problem situations. The critical areas for this course are as follows:

Critical Area 1: A central theme is that the arithmetic of rational expressions is governed by the same rules as the arithmetic of rational numbers. Students explore the structural similarities between the system of polynomials and the system of integers. They draw on analogies between polynomial arithmetic and base-ten computation, focusing on properties of operations, particularly the distributive property. Connections are made between multiplication of polynomials with multiplication of multi-digit integers, and division of polynomials with long division of integers. Students identify zeros of polynomials, including complex zeros of quadratic polynomials, and make connections between zeros of polynomials and solutions of polynomial equations. The fundamental theorem of algebra is examined.

Critical Area 2: Building on their previous work with functions, and on their work with trigonometric ratios and circles in Geometry, students now use the coordinate plane to extend trigonometry to model periodic phenomena.

Critical Area 3: Students synthesize and generalize what they have learned about a variety of function families. They extend their work with exponential functions to include solving exponential equations with logarithms. They explore the effects of transformations on graphs of diverse functions, including functions arising in an application, in order to abstract the general principle that transformations on a graph always have the same effect regardless of the type of the underlying function. They identify appropriate types of functions to model a situation, they adjust parameters to improve the model, and they compare models by analyzing appropriateness of fit and making judgments about the domain over which a model is a good fit. The description of modeling as "*the process of choosing and using mathematics and statistics to analyze empirical situations, to understand them better, and to make decisions*" is at the heart of this unit. The narrative discussion and diagram of the modeling cycle should be considered when knowledge of functions, statistics, and geometry is applied in a modeling context.

Critical Area 4: Students see how the visual displays and summary statistics they learned in earlier grades relate to different types of data and to probability distributions. They identify different ways of collecting data— including sample surveys, experiments, and simulations—and the role that randomness and careful design play in the conclusions that can be drawn.

[56] **Adapted from *Appendix A: Designing High School Mathematics Course Based on the Common Core State Standards,* http://www.corestandards.org/the-standards**

[57] In this course rational functions are limited to those whose numerators are of degree at most 1 and denominators of degree at most 2; rational functions are limited to square roots or cube roots of at most quadratic polynomials.

Algebra II Overview

Number and Quantity

The Real Number System

- Extend the properties of exponents to rational exponents

Complex Number System

- Perform arithmetic operations with complex numbers
- Use complex numbers in polynomial identities and equations

Vector and Matrix Quantities

- Represent and model with vector quantities
- Perform operations on matrices and use matrices in applications

Algebra

Seeing Structure in Expressions

- Interpret the structure of expressions
- Write expressions in equivalent forms to solve problems

Arithmetic with Polynomials and Rational Expressions

- Perform arithmetic operations on polynomials
- Understand the relationship between zeros and factors of polynomials
- Use polynomial identities to solve problems
- Rewrite rational expressions

Creating Equations

- Create equations that describe numbers or equations

Reasoning with Equations and Inequalities

- Understand solving equations as a process of reasoning and explain the reasoning
- Represent and solve equations and inequalities graphically

Functions

Interpreting Functions

- Interpret functions that arise in applications in terms of a context
- Analyze functions using different representations

Building Functions

- Build a function that models a relationship between two quantities
- Build new functions from existing functions

Linear, Quadratic, and Exponential Models

- Construct and compare linear, quadratic, and exponential models and solve problems

Mathematical Practices

1. Make sense of problems and persevere in solving them.
2. Reason abstractly and quantitatively.
3. Construct viable arguments and critique the reasoning of others.
4. Model with mathematics.
5. Use appropriate tools strategically.
6. Attend to precision.
7. Look for and make use of structure.
8. Look for and express regularity in repeated reasoning.

Functions (con't)

Trigonometric Functions

- Extend the domain of trigonometric functions using the unit circle
- Model periodic phenomena with trigonometric functions
- Prove and apply trigonometric identities

Statistics and Probability

Interpreting Categorical and Quantitative Data

- Summarize, represent and interpret data on a single count of measurement variable

Making Inferences and Justifying Conclusions

- Understand and evaluate random processes underlying statistical experiments
- Make inferences and justify conclusions from sample surveys, experiments and observational studies

Number and Quantity

The Real Number System N.RN

Extend the properties of exponents to rational exponents[58].

1. Explain how the definition of the meaning of rational exponents follows from extending the properties of integer exponents to those values, allowing for a notation for radicals in terms of rational exponents. *For example, we define $5^{1/3}$ to be the cube root of 5 because we want $(5^{1/3})^3 = 5^{(1/3) \times 3}$ to hold, so $(5^{1/3})^3$ must equal 5.*
2. Rewrite expressions involving radicals and rational exponents using the properties of exponents.

The Complex Number System N.CN

Perform arithmetic operations with complex numbers

1. Know there is a complex number i such that $i^2 = -1$, and every complex number has the form $a + bi$ with a and b real.
2. Use the relation $i^2 = -1$ and the commutative, associative, and distributive properties to add, subtract, and multiply complex numbers.
3. (+)Find the conjugate of a complex number; use conjugates to find moduli and quotients of complex numbers.

Use complex numbers in polynomial identities and equations

7. Solve quadratic equations with real coefficients that have complex solutions.
8. (+) Extend polynomial identities to the complex numbers. For example, rewrite $x^2 + 4$ as $(x + 2i)(x - 2i)$.
9. (+) Know the Fundamental Theorem of Algebra; show that it is true for quadratic polynomials.

Vector Quantities and Matrices N.VM

Represent and model with vector quantities.

1. (+) Recognize vector quantities as having both magnitude and direction. Represent vector quantities by directed line segments, and use appropriate symbols for vectors and their magnitudes (e.g., v, $|v|$, $||v||$, v).
3. (+) Solve problems involving velocity and other quantities that can be represented by vectors.

Perform operations on matrices and use matrices in applications

6. (+) Use matrices to represent and manipulate data, e.g., to represent payoffs or incidence relationships in a network.
8. (+) Add, subtract, and multiply matrices of appropriate dimensions.
12. (+) Work with 2 x 2 matrices as transformations of the plane, and interpret the absolute value of the determinant in terms of area.

Algebra A.SSE

Seeing Structure in Expressions

Interpret the structure of expressions

1. Interpret expressions that represent a quantity in terms of its context.★★
2. Use the structure of an expression to identify ways to rewrite it. *For example, see $x^4 - y^4$ as $(x^2)^2 - (y^2)^2$, thus recognizing it as a difference of squares that can be factored as $(x^2 - y^2)(x^2 + y^2)$.*

Write expressions in equivalent forms to solve problems

---

[58] Introduce rational exponents in simple situations; master in Algebra II

★ Specific modeling standards appear through out the high school standards indicated by a star symbol (★). The star symbol appearing on the cluster heading should be understood to indicate that all standards in that cluster are modeling standards.

4. Derive the formula for the sum of a finite geometric series (when the common ratio is not 1), and use the formula to solve problems. *For example, calculate mortgage payments.* ⋆

Arithmetic with Polynomials and Rational Expressions **A.APR**

Perform arithmetic operations on polynomials

1. Understand that polynomials form a system analogous to the integers, namely, they are closed under the operations of addition, subtraction, and multiplication; add, subtract, and multiply polynomials.
   MA.1a. Divide polynomials.

Understand the relationship between zeros and factors of polynomials

2. Know and apply the Remainder Theorem: For a polynomial $p(x)$ and a number a, the remainder on division by $x – a$ is $p(a)$, so $p(a) = 0$ if and only if $(x – a)$ is a factor of $p(x)$.
3. Identify zeros of polynomials when suitable factorizations are available, and use the zeros to construct a rough graph of the function defined by the polynomial.

Use polynomial identities to solve problems

4. Prove polynomial identities and use them to describe numerical relationships. *For example, the polynomial identity* $(x^2 + y^2)^2 = (x^2 – y^2)^2 + (2xy)^2$ *can be used to generate Pythagorean triples.*
5. (+) Know and apply that the Binomial Theorem gives the expansion of $(x + y)^n$ in powers of x and y for a positive integer n, where x and y are any numbers, with coefficients determined for example by Pascal's Triangle.[59]

Rewrite rational expressions

6. Rewrite simple rational expressions in different forms; write $a(x)/b(x)$ in the form $q(x) + r(x)/b(x)$, where $a(x)$, $b(x)$, $q(x)$, and $r(x)$ are polynomials with the degree of $r(x)$ less than the degree of $b(x)$, using inspection, long division, or, for the more complicated examples, a computer algebra system.
7. (+) Understand that rational expressions form a system analogous to the rational numbers, closed under addition, subtraction, multiplication, and division by a nonzero rational expression; add, subtract, multiply, and divide rational expressions.

Creating Equations⋆ **A.CED**

Create equations that describe numbers or relationships

1. Create equations and inequalities in one variable and use them to solve problems. *Include equations arising from linear and quadratic functions, and simple rational and exponential functions.* ⋆
2. Create equations in two or more variables to represent relationships between quantities; graph equations on coordinate axes with labels and scales. ⋆
3. Represent constraints by equations or inequalities, and by systems of equations and/or inequalities, and interpret solutions as viable or non-viable options in a modeling context. *For example, represent inequalities describing nutritional and cost constraints on combinations of different foods.* ⋆
4. Rearrange formulas to highlight a quantity of interest, using the same reasoning as in solving equations. *For example, rearrange Ohm's law V = IR to highlight resistance R.* ⋆

Reasoning with equations and inequalities **A.REI**

Understand solving equations as a process of reasoning and explain the reasoning

2. Solve simple rational and radical equations in one variable, and give examples showing how extraneous solutions may arise.

Represent and solve equations and inequalities graphically

11. Explain why the x-coordinates of the points where the graphs of the equations y = f(x) and y = g(x) intersect are the solutions of the equation f(x) = g(x); find the solutions approximately, e.g., using

[59] The Binomial Theorem can be proved by mathematical induction or by a combinatorial argument.

⋆ Specific modeling standards appear through out the high school standards indicated by a star symbol (★). The star symbol appearing on the cluster heading should be understood to indicate that all standards in that cluster are modeling standards.

technology to graph the functions, make tables of values, or find successive approximations. Include cases where f(x) and/or g(x) are linear, polynomial, rational, absolute value, exponential, and logarithmic functions.*

Functions

Interpreting Functions **F.IF**

Interpret functions that arise in applications in terms of the context★

4. For a function that models a relationship between two quantities, interpret key features of graphs and tables in terms of the quantities, and sketch graphs showing key features given a verbal description of the relationship. *Key features include: intercepts; intervals where the function is increasing, decreasing, positive, or negative; relative maximums and minimums; symmetries; end behavior; and periodicity.* ★
5. Relate the domain of a function to its graph and, where applicable, to the quantitative relationship it describes. *For example, if the function h(n) gives the number of person-hours it takes to assemble n engines in a factory, then the positive integers would be an appropriate domain for the function.* ★
6. Calculate and interpret the average rate of change of a function (presented symbolically or as a table) over a specified interval. Estimate the rate of change from a graph. ★

Analyze functions using different representations

7. Graph functions expressed symbolically and show key features of the graph, by hand in simple cases and using technology for more complicated cases. ★
   b. Graph square root, cube root, and piecewise-defined functions, including step functions and absolute value functions. ★
   c. Graph polynomial functions, identifying zeros when suitable factorizations are available, and showing end behavior. ★
   e. Graph exponential and logarithmic functions, showing intercepts and end behavior, and trigonometric functions, showing period, midline, and amplitude. ★
8. Write a function defined by an expression in different but equivalent forms to reveal and explain different properties of the function.
   MA.8c. Translate between different representations of functions and relations: graphs, equations, point sets, and tables.
9. Compare properties of two functions each represented in a different way (algebraically, graphically, numerically in tables, or by verbal descriptions). For example, given a graph of one quadratic function and an algebraic expression for another, say which has the larger maximum.

Building Functions **F.BF**

Build a function that models a relationship between two quantities

1. Write a function that describes a relationship between two quantities.*
   b. Combine standard function types using arithmetic operations. For example, build a function that models the temperature of a cooling body by adding a constant function to a decaying exponential, and relate these functions to the model.

Build new functions from existing functions

3. Identify the effect on the graph of replacing f(x) by f(x) + k, k f(x), f(kx), and f(x + k) for specific values of k (both positive and negative); find the value of k given the graphs. Experiment with cases and illustrate an explanation of the effects on the graph using technology. Include recognizing even and odd functions from their graphs and algebraic expressions for them.
4. Find inverse functions.

★ Specific modeling standards appear through out the high school standards indicated by a star symbol (★). The star symbol appearing on the cluster heading should be understood to indicate that all standards in that cluster are modeling standards.

a. Solve an equation of the form f(x) = c for a simple function f that has an inverse and write an expression for the inverse. *For example, $f(x) = 2(x^3)$ or $f(x) = (x+1)/(x-1)$ for $x \neq 1$.*

Linear, Quadratic, and Exponential Models★ **F.LE**

Construct and compare linear, quadratic, and exponential models and solve problems. ★

4. For exponential models, express as a logarithm the solution to ab^(ct) = d where a, c, and d are numbers and the base b is 2, 10, or e; evaluate the logarithm using technology. ★

Trigonometric Functions **F.TF**

Extend the domain of trigonometric functions using the unit circle

1. Understand radian measure of an angle as the length of the arc on the unit circle subtended by the angle.
2. Explain how the unit circle in the coordinate plane enables the extension of trigonometric functions to all real numbers, interpreted as radian measures of angles traversed counterclockwise around the unit circle.

Model periodic phenomena with trigonometric functions

5. Choose trigonometric functions to model periodic phenomena with specified amplitude, frequency, and midline. ★

Prove and apply trigonometric identities

8. Prove the Pythagorean identity (sin A)^2 + (cos A)^2 = 1 and use it to find sin A, cos A, or tan A, given sin A, cos A, or tan A, and the quadrant of the angle.

Statistics and Probability★

Interpreting Categorical and Quantitative Data★ **S.ID**

Summarize, represent, and interpret data on a single count or measurement variable★

4. Use the mean and standard deviation of a data set to fit it to a normal distribution and to estimate population percentages. Recognize that there are data sets for which such a procedure is not appropriate. Use calculators, spreadsheets, and tables to estimate areas under the normal curve. ★

Making Inferences and Justifying Conclusions **S.IC**

Understand and evaluate random processes underlying statistical experiments

1. Understand statistics as a process for making inferences about population parameters based on a random sample from that population. ★
2. Decide if a specified model is consistent with results from a given data-generating process, e.g., using simulation. For example, a model says a spinning coin falls heads up with probability 0. 5. Would a result of 5 tails in a row cause you to question the model? ★

Make inferences and justify conclusions from sample surveys, experiments and observational studies

3. Recognize the purposes of and differences among sample surveys, experiments, and observational studies; explain how randomization relates to each. ★
4. Use data from a sample survey to estimate a population mean or proportion; develop a margin of error through the use of simulation models for random sampling. ★
5. Use data from a randomized experiment to compare two treatments; use simulations to decide if differences between parameters are significant. ★
6. Evaluate reports based on data. ★

★ Specific modeling standards appear through out the high school standards indicated by a star symbol (★). The star symbol appearing on the cluster heading should be understood to indicate that all standards in that cluster are modeling standards.

Integrated Pathway: Mathematics I[60]

The fundamental purpose of Mathematics I is to formalize and extend the mathematics that students learned in the middle grades. The critical areas deepen and extend understanding of linear relationships, in part by contrasting them with exponential phenomena, and in part by applying linear models to data that exhibit a linear trend. Mathematics 1 uses properties and theorems involving congruent figures to deepen and extend understanding of geometric knowledge from prior grades. The course ties together the algebraic and geometric ideas studied. The Mathematical Practice Standards apply throughout each course and, together with the content standards, prescribe that students experience mathematics as a coherent, useful, and logical subject that makes use of their ability to make sense of problem situations.

Critical Area 1: By the end of eighth grade students have had a variety of experiences working with expressions and creating equations. Students become facile with algebraic manipulation in much the same way that they are facile with numerical manipulation. Algebraic facility includes rearranging and collecting terms, factoring, identifying and canceling common factors in rational expressions and applying properties of exponents. Students continue this work by using quantities to model and analyze situations, to interpret expressions, and by creating equations to describe situations.

Critical Area 2: In earlier grades, students define, evaluate, and compare functions, and use them to model relationships between quantities. Students will learn function notation and develop the concepts of domain and range. They move beyond viewing functions as processes that take inputs and yield outputs and start viewing functions as objects in their own right. They explore many examples of functions, including sequences; they interpret functions given graphically, numerically, symbolically, and verbally, translate between representations, and understand the limitations of various representations. They work with functions given by graphs and tables, keeping in mind that, depending upon the context, these representations are likely to be approximate and incomplete. Their work includes functions that can be described or approximated by formulas as well as those that cannot. When functions describe relationships between quantities arising from a context, students reason with the units in which those quantities are measured. Students build on and informally extend their understanding of integer exponents to consider exponential functions. They compare and contrast linear and exponential functions, distinguishing between additive and multiplicative change. They interpret arithmetic sequences as linear functions and geometric sequences as exponential functions.

Critical Area 3: By the end of eighth grade, students have learned to solve linear equations in one variable and have applied graphical and algebraic methods to analyze and solve systems of linear equations in two variables. Building on these earlier experiences, students analyze and explain the process of solving an equation and to justify the process used in solving a system of equations. Students develop fluency writing, interpreting, and translating between various forms of linear equations and inequalities, and using them to solve problems. They master the solution of linear equations and apply related solution techniques and the laws of exponents to the creation and solution of simple exponential equations. Students explore systems of equations and inequalities, and they find and interpret their solutions. All of this work is grounded on understanding quantities and on relationships between them.

Critical Area 4: Students' prior experiences with data Is the basis for with the more formal means of assessing how a model fits data. Students use regression techniques to describe approximately linear relationships between quantities. They use graphical representations and knowledge of the context to make

[60] Adapted from *Appendix A: Designing High School Mathematics Course Based on the Common Core State Standards,* http://www.corestandards.org/the-standards

judgments about the appropriateness of linear models. With linear models, they look at residuals to analyze the goodness of fit.

Critical Area 5: In previous grades, students were asked to draw triangles based on given measurements. They also have prior experience with rigid motions: translations, reflections, and rotations and have used these to develop notions about what it means for two objects to be congruent. Students establish triangle congruence criteria, based on analyses of rigid motions and formal constructions. They solve problems about triangles, quadrilaterals, and other polygons. They apply reasoning to complete geometric constructions and explain why they work.

Critical Area 6: Building on their work with the Pythagorean Theorem in 8th grade to find distances, students use a rectangular coordinate system to verify geometric relationships, including properties of special triangles and quadrilaterals and slopes of parallel and perpendicular lines.

Mathematics I Overview

Number and Quantity

Quantities

- Reason quantitatively and use units to solve problems

Algebra

Seeing Structure in Expressions

- Interpret the structure of expressions

Creating Equations

- Create equations that describe numbers of relationships

Reasoning with Equations and Inequalities

- Understand solving equations as a process of reasoning and explain the reasoning
- Solve equations and inequalities in one variable
- Solve systems of equations
- Represent and solve equations and inequalities graphically

Functions

Interpreting Functions

- Understand the concept of a function and use function notation
- Interpret functions that arise in applications in terms of a context
- Analyze functions using different representations

Building Functions

- Build a function that models a relationship between two quantities
- Build a new function from existing functions

Linear, Quadratic, and Exponential Models

- Construct and compare linear, quadratic, and exponential models and solve problems
- Interpret expressions for functions in terms of the situation they model

Geometry

Congruence

- Experiment with transformations in the plane
- Understand congruence in terms of rigid motions
- Make geometric constructions

Expressing Geometric Properties with Equations

- Use coordinates to prove simple geometric theorems algebraically

Mathematical Practices

1. Make sense of problems and persevere in solving them.
2. Reason abstractly and quantitatively.
3. Construct viable arguments and critique the reasoning of others.
4. Model with mathematics.
5. Use appropriate tools strategically.
6. Attend to precision.
7. Look for and make use of structure.
8. Look for and express regularity in repeated reasoning.

Statistics and Probability

Interpreting Categorical and Quantitative Data

- Summarize, represent, and interpret data on a single count or measurement variable
- Summarize, represent, and interpret data on two categorical and quantitative variables

Number and Quantities

Quantities[61] **N.Q**

Reason quantitatively and use units to solve problems.

1. Use units as a way to understand problems and to guide the solution of multi-step problems; choose and interpret units consistently in formulas; choose and interpret the scale and the origin in graphs and data displays.[★]
2. Reason quantitatively and use units to solve problems. Define appropriate quantities for the purpose of descriptive modeling.★
3. Choose a level of accuracy appropriate to limitations on measurement when reporting quantities.
   MA.9-12.N.Q.3a. Describe the effects of approximate error in measurement and rounding on measurements and on computed values from measures.

Algebra

Seeing Structure in Expressions[62] **A.SSE**

Interpret the structure of expressions.

1. Interpret expressions that represent a quantity in terms of its context.★
   a. Interpret parts of an expression, such as terms, factors, and coefficients. ★
   b. Interpret complicated expressions by viewing one or more of their parts as a single entity. *For example, interpret P(1+r)^n as the product of P and a factor not depending on P.* ★

Creating Equations★[63] **A.CED**

Create equations that describe numbers or relationship.

1. Create equations and inequalities in one variable and use them to solve problems. *Include equations arising from linear and quadratic functions, and simple rational and exponential functions.**
2. Create equations in two or more variables to represent relationships between quantities; graph equations on coordinate axes with labels and scales.*
3. Represent constraints by equations or inequalities, and by systems of equations and/or inequalities, and interpret solutions as viable or non-viable options in a modeling context. *For example, represent inequalities describing nutritional and cost constraints on combinations of different foods.*[64]*
4. Rearrange formulas to highlight a quantity of interest, using the same reasoning as in solving equations. *For example, rearrange Ohm's law V = IR to highlight resistance R.**

Reasoning with equations and Inequalities **A.REI**

Understand solving equations as a process of reasoning and explain the reasoning

1. Explain each step in solving a simple equation as following from the equality of numbers asserted at the previous step, starting from the assumption that the original equation has a solution. Construct a viable argument to justify a solution method. [65]

Solve equations and inequalities in one variable.[66]

3. Solve linear equations and inequalities in one variable, including equations with coefficients represented by letters.
   MA.3a**.** Solve linear equations and inequalities in one variable involving absolute value.

---

[61] Foundation for work with expressions, equations, and functions

[★] Specific modeling standards appear through out the high school standards indicated by a star symbol (★). The star symbol appearing on the cluster heading should be understood to indicate that all standards in that cluster are modeling standards.

[62] Limit Mathematics I to linear expressions and exponential expressions with integer exponents

[63] Limit Mathematics I to linear and exponential equations with integer exponents

[64] Limit to linear equations and inequalities

[65] Master for linear equations and inequalities, learn as general principle to be expanded in Mathematics II and III

[66] Limit Mathematics I to linear inequalities and exponential of a form 2^x=1/16.

Solve systems of equations.[67]

5. Prove that, given a system of two equations in two variables, replacing one equation by the sum of that equation and a multiple of the other produces a system with the same solutions.

Represent and solve equations and inequalities graphically.[68]

10. Understand that the graph of an equation in two variables is the set of all its solutions plotted in the coordinate plane, often forming a curve (which could be a line).
11. Explain why the x-coordinates of the points where the graphs of the equations y = f(x) and y = g(x) intersect are the solutions of the equation f(x) = g(x); find the solutions approximately, e.g., using technology to graph the functions, make tables of values, or find successive approximations. Include cases where f(x) and/or g(x) are linear, polynomial, rational, absolute value, exponential, and logarithmic functions.★
12. Graph the solutions to a linear inequality in two variables as a half-plane (excluding the boundary in the case of a strict inequality), and graph the solution set to a system of linear inequalities in two variables as the intersection of the corresponding half-planes.

Functions

Interpreting Functions F.IF

Understand the concept of a function and use function notation.[69]

1. Understand that a function from one set (called the domain) to another set (called the range) assigns to each element of the domain exactly one element of the range. If f is a function and x is an element of its domain, then f(x) denotes the output of f corresponding to the input x. The graph of f is the graph of the equation y = f(x).
2. Use function notation, evaluate functions for inputs in their domains, and interpret statements that use function notation in terms of a context.
3. Recognize that sequences are functions, sometimes defined recursively, whose domain is a subset of the integers. *For example, the Fibonacci sequence is defined recursively by f(0) = f(1) = 1, f(n+1) = f(n) + f(n-1) for n ≥ 1 (n is greater than or equal to 1).*

Interpret functions that arise in applications in terms of the context.[70]

4. For a function that models a relationship between two quantities, interpret key features of graphs and tables in terms of the quantities, and sketch graphs showing key features given a verbal description of the relationship. *Key features include: intercepts; intervals where the function is increasing, decreasing, positive, or negative; relative maximums and minimums; symmetries; end behavior; and periodicity.**
5. Relate the domain of a function to its graph and, where applicable, to the quantitative relationship it describes. *For example, if the function h(n) gives the number of person-hours it takes to assemble n engines in a factory, then the positive integers would be an appropriate domain for the function.**
6. Calculate and interpret the average rate of change of a function (presented symbolically or as a table) over a specified interval. Estimate the rate of change from a graph.*

Analyze functions using different representations.[71]

7. Graph functions expressed symbolically and show key features of the graph, by hand in simple cases and using technology for more complicated cases.*

---

[67] Limit Mathematics I to systems of linear equations

[68] Limit Mathematics I to linear and exponential equations; learn as general principle to be expanded in Mathematics II and III.

★ Specific modeling standards appear through out the high school standards indicated by a star symbol (★). The star symbol appearing on the cluster heading should be understood to indicate that all standards in that cluster are modeling standards.

[69] Focus on linear and exponential functions with integer domains and on arithmetic and geometric sequences.

[70] Focus on linear and exponential functions with integer domains.

[71] Limit Mathematics I to linear and exponential functions with integer domains.

a. Graph linear and quadratic functions and show intercepts, maxima, and minima.*

e. Graph exponential and logarithmic functions, showing intercepts and end behavior, and trigonometric functions, showing period, midline, and amplitude.*

9. Compare properties of two functions each represented in a different way (algebraically, graphically, numerically in tables, or by verbal descriptions). *For example, given a graph of one quadratic function and an algebraic expression for another, say which has the larger maximum.*

MA10. Given algebraic, numeric, and/or graphical representations of functions, recognize functions as polynomial, rational, logarithmic, exponential, or trigonometric.

Building Functions **F.BF**

Build a function that models a relationship between two quantities.[72]

1. Write a function that describes a relationship between two quantities.★
   a. Determine an explicit expression, a recursive process, or steps for calculation from a context.
   b. Combine standard function types using arithmetic operations. *For example, build a function that models the temperature of a cooling body by adding a constant function to a decaying exponential, and relate these functions to the model.*
2. Build a function that models a relationship between two quantities. Write arithmetic and geometric sequences both recursively and with an explicit formula, use them to model situations, and translate between the two forms.*

Build new functions from existing functions.[73]

3. Identify the effect on the graph of replacing f(x) by f(x) + k, k f(x), f(kx), and f(x + k) for specific values of k (both positive and negative); find the value of k given the graphs. Experiment with cases and illustrate an explanation of the effects on the graph using technology. *Include recognizing even and odd functions from their graphs and algebraic expressions for them.*

Linear, Quadratic, and Exponential Models **F.LE**

Construct and compare linear, quadratic, and exponential models and solve problems.[74]

1. Distinguish between situations that can be modeled with linear functions and with exponential functions.
   a. Prove that linear functions grow by equal differences over equal intervals and that exponential functions grow by equal factors over equal intervals.*
   b. Recognize situations in which one quantity changes at a constant rate per unit interval relative to another.*
   c. Recognize situations in which a quantity grows or decays by a constant percent rate per unit interval relative to another.*
2. Construct linear and exponential functions, including arithmetic and geometric sequences, given a graph, a description of a relationship, or two input-output pairs (include reading these from a table).*
3. Observe using graphs and tables that a quantity increasing exponentially eventually exceeds a quantity increasing linearly, quadratically, or (more generally) as a polynomial function.*

Interpret expressions for functions in terms of the situation they model.[75]

5. Interpret the parameters in a linear or exponential function in terms of a context.*

Geometry

Congruence **G.CO**

---

[72] Limit Mathematics I to linear and exponential functions with integer domains.

★ Specific modeling standards appear through out the high school standards indicated by a star symbol (★). The star symbol appearing on the cluster heading should be understood to indicate that all standards in that cluster are modeling standards.

[73] Limit Mathematics I to linear and exponential functions; focus on vertical translations for exponential funcations.

[74] Limit Mathematics I to linear and exponential models

[75] Limit Mathematics I to linear and exponential functions of the form $f(x)= b^x+k$.

Experiment with transformations in the plane.

1. Know precise definitions of angle, circle, perpendicular line, parallel line, and line segment, based on the undefined notions of point, line, distance along a line, and distance around a circular arc.
2. Represent transformations in the plane using, e.g., transparencies and geometry software; describe transformations as functions that take points in the plane as inputs and give other points as outputs. Compare transformations that preserve distance and angle to those that do not (e.g., translation versus horizontal stretch).
3. Given a rectangle, parallelogram, trapezoid, or regular polygon, describe the rotations and reflections that carry it onto itself.
4. Develop definitions of rotations, reflections, and translations in terms of angles, circles, perpendicular lines, parallel lines, and line segments.
5. Given a geometric figure and a rotation, reflection, or translation, draw the transformed figure using, e.g., graph paper, tracing paper, or geometry software. Specify a sequence of transformations that will carry a given figure onto another.

Understand congruence in terms of rigid motions.[76]

6. Use geometric descriptions of rigid motions to transform figures and to predict the effect of a given rigid motion on a given figure; given two figures, use the definition of congruence in terms of rigid motions to decide if they are congruent.
7. Use the definition of congruence in terms of rigid motions to show that two triangles are congruent if and only if corresponding pairs of sides and corresponding pairs of angles are congruent.
8. Explain how the criteria for triangle congruence (ASA, SAS, and SSS) follow from the definition of congruence in terms of rigid motions.

Make geometric constructions.[77]

12. Make formal geometric constructions with a variety of tools and methods (compass and straightedge, string, reflective devices, paper folding, dynamic geometric software, etc.). *Copying a segment; copying an angle; bisecting a segment; bisecting an angle; constructing perpendicular lines, including the perpendicular bisector of a line segment; and constructing a line parallel to a given line through a point not on the line.*
13. Construct an equilateral triangle, a square, and a regular hexagon inscribed in a circle.

Expressing Geometric Properties with Equations G.GPE

Use coordinates to prove simple geometric theorems algebraically[78]

4. Use coordinates to prove simple geometric theorems algebraically. *For example, prove or disprove that a figure defined by four given points in the coordinate plane is a rectangle; prove or disprove that the point (1,$\sqrt{3}$) lies on the circle centered at the origin and containing the point (0,2).*
5. Prove the slope criteria for parallel and perpendicular lines and use them to solve geometric problems (e.g., find the equation of a line parallel or perpendicular to a given line that passes through a given point).
7. Use coordinates to compute perimeters of polygons and areas of triangles and rectangles, e.g., using the distance formula.

Statistics and Probability★

Interpreting Categorical and Quantitative Data S.ID

Summarize, represent, and interpret data on a single count or measurement variable.

---

[76] Build on rigid motions as a familiar starting point for development of geometric proof.
[77] Formalize proof, and focus on explanation of process
[78] Include the distance formula and relate to the Pythagorean Theorem.
★ Specific modeling standards appear through out the high school standards indicated by a star symbol (★). The star symbol appearing on the cluster heading should be understood to indicate that all standards in that cluster are modeling standards.

1. Represent data with plots on the real number line (dot plots, histograms, and box plots).*
2. Use statistics appropriate to the shape of the data distribution to compare center (median, mean) and spread (interquartile range, standard deviation) of two or more different data sets.*
3. Interpret differences in shape, center, and spread in the context of the data sets, accounting for possible effects of extreme data points (outliers).*

Summarize, represent, and interpret data on two categorical and quantitative variables.[79]

5. Summarize categorical data for two categories in two-way frequency tables. Interpret relative frequencies in the context of the data (including joint, marginal, and conditional relative frequencies). Recognize possible associations and trends in the data.*
6. Represent data on two quantitative variables on a scatter plot, and describe how the variables are related.*
    a. Fit a function to the data; use functions fitted to data to solve problems in the context of the data. Use given functions or choose a function suggested by the context. Emphasize linear, quadratic, and exponential models.*
    b. Informally assess the fit of a function by plotting and analyzing residuals.*
    c. Fit a linear function for a scatter plot that suggests a linear association.*

Interpret linear models.

7. Interpret the slope (rate of change) and the intercept (constant term) of a linear model in the context of the data.*
8. Compute (using technology) and interpret the correlation coefficient of a linear fit.*
9. Distinguish between correlation and causation.*

[79] Focus on linear applications; learn as general principle to be expanded in Mathematics II and III

Integrated Pathway: Mathematics II[80]

The focus of Mathematics II is on quadratic expressions, equations, and functions; comparing their characteristics and behavior to those of linear and exponential relationships from Mathematics I as organized into 5 critical areas. The need for extending the set of rational numbers arises and real and complex numbers are introduced so that all quadratic equations can be solved. The link between probability and data is explored through conditional probability and counting methods, including their use in making and evaluating decisions. The study of similarity leads to an understanding of right triangle trigonometry and connects to quadratics through Pythagorean relationships. Circles, with their quadratic algebraic representations, round out the course. The Mathematical Practice Standards apply throughout each course and, together with the content standards, prescribe that students experience mathematics as a coherent, useful, and logical subject that makes use of their ability to make sense of problem situations.

Critical Area 1: Students extend the laws of exponents to rational exponents and explore distinctions between rational and irrational numbers by considering their decimal representations. Students learn that when quadratic equations do not have real solutions the number system must be extended so that solutions exist, analogous to the way in which extending the whole numbers to the negative numbers allows $x+1 = 0$ to have a solution. Students explore relationships between number systems: whole numbers, integers, rational numbers, real numbers, and complex numbers. The guiding principle is that equations with no solutions in one number system may have solutions in a larger number system.

Critical Area 2: Students consider quadratic functions, comparing the key characteristics of quadratic functions to those of linear and exponential functions. They select from among these functions to model phenomena. Students learn to anticipate the graph of a quadratic function by interpreting various forms of quadratic expressions. In particular, they identify the real solutions of a quadratic equation as the zeros of a related quadratic function. When quadratic equations do not have real solutions, students learn that that the graph of the related quadratic function does not cross the horizontal axis. They expand their experience with functions to include more specialized functions—absolute value, step, and those that are piecewise-defined.

Critical Area 3: Students begin by focusing on the structure of expressions, rewriting expressions to clarify and reveal aspects of the relationship they represent. They create and solve equations, inequalities, and systems of equations involving exponential and quadratic expressions.

Critical Area 4: Building on probability concepts that began in the middle grades, students use the languages of set theory to expand their ability to compute and interpret theoretical and experimental probabilities for compound events, attending to mutually exclusive events, independent events, and conditional probability. Students should make use of geometric probability models wherever possible. They use probability to make informed decisions.

Critical Area 5: Students apply their earlier experience with dilations and proportional reasoning to build a formal understanding of similarity. They identify criteria for similarity of triangles, use similarity to solve problems, and apply similarity in right triangles to understand right triangle trigonometry, with particular attention to special right triangles and the Pythagorean Theorem. Students develop facility with geometric proof. They use what they know about congruence and similarity to prove theorems involving lines, angles, triangles, and other polygons. They explore a variety of formats for writing proofs.

---

[80] **Adapted from *Appendix A: Designing High School Mathematics Course Based on the Common Core State Standards,* http://www.corestandards.org/the-standards**

Mathematics II Overview

Number and Quantity

The Real Number System

- Extend the properties of exponents to rational exponents
- Use properties of rational and irrational numbers

The Complex Number Systems

- Perform operations on matrices and use matrices in applications
- Use complex numbers in polynomial identities and equations

Algebra

Seeing Structure in Expressions

- Interpret the structure of expressions
- Write expressions in equivalent forms to solve problems

Arithmetic with Polynomials and Rational Expressions

- Perform arithmetic operations on polynomials

Creating Equations

- Create equations that describe numbers of relationships

Reasoning with Equations and Inequalities

- Solve equations and inequalities in one variable
- Solve systems of equations

Functions

Interpreting Functions

- Interpret functions that arise in applications in terms of a context
- Analyze functions using different representations

Building functions

- Build a function that models a relationship between two quantities
- Build new functions from existing functions

Linear, Quadratic, and Exponential Models

- Construct and compare linear, quadratic and exponential models and solve problems

Trigonometric Functions

- Prove and apply trigonometric identities

Geometry

Congruence

- Prove geometric theorems

Similarity, Right Triangles, and Trigonometry

- Understand similarity in terms of similarity transformations
- Prove theorems involving similarity
- Define trigonometric ratios and solve problems involving right triangles

Mathematical Practices

1. Make sense of problems and persevere in solving them.
2. Reason abstractly and quantitatively.
3. Construct viable arguments and critique the reasoning of others.
4. Model with mathematics.
5. Use appropriate tools strategically.
6. Attend to precision.
7. Look for and make use of structure.
8. Look for and express regularity in repeated reasoning.

Geometry (con't)

Circles

- Understand and apply theorems about circles
- Find arc lengths and areas of sectors of circles.

Expressing Geometric Properties with Equations

- Translate between the geometric description and the equation for a conic section
- Use coordinates to prove simple geometric theorems algebraically

Geometric Measurement and Dimension

- Explain volume formulas and use them to solve problems

Statistics and Probability

Conditional Probability and the Rules of Probability

- Understand independence and conditional probability and use them to interpret data
- Use the rules of probability to compute probabilities of compound events in a uniform probability model

Using Probability to Make Decisions

- Use probability to evaluate outcomes or decisions

Number and Quantity

The Real Number System N.RN

Extend the properties of exponents to rational exponents.

1. Explain how the definition of the meaning of rational exponents follows from extending the properties of integer exponents to those values, allowing for a notation for radicals in terms of rational exponents. *For example, we define $5^{1/3}$ to be the cube root of 5 because we want $(5^{1/3})^3 = 5^{(1/3) \times 3}$ to hold, so $(5^{1/3})^3$ must equal 5.*
2. Rewrite expressions involving radicals and rational exponents using the properties of exponents.

Use properties of rational and irrational numbers.

3. Explain why the sum or product of rational numbers is rational; that the sum of a rational number and an irrational number is irrational; and that the product of a nonzero rational number and an irrational number is irrational.

The Complex Number System N.CN

Perform arithmetic operations with complex numbers.[81]

1. Know there is a complex number i such that $i^2 = -1$, and every complex number has the form a + bi with a and b real.
2. Use the relation $i^2 = -1$ and the commutative, associative, and distributive properties to add, subtract, and multiply complex numbers.

Use complex numbers in polynomial identities and equations.[82]

7. Solve quadratic equations with real coefficients that have complex solutions.

8. (+) Extend polynomial identities to the complex numbers. For example, rewrite $x^2 + 4$ as $(x + 2i)(x - 2i)$.

9. (+) Know the Fundamental Theorem of Algebra; show that it is true for quadratic polynomials.

Algebra

Seeing Structure in Expressions★ A.SSE

Interpret the structure of expressions.[83]

1. Interpret expressions that represent a quantity in terms of its context.*
   a. Interpret parts of an expression, such as terms, factors, and coefficients.*
   b. Interpret complicated expressions by viewing one or more of their parts as a single entity. *For example, interpret P(1+r)^n as the product of P and a factor not depending on P.**
2. Use the structure of an expression to identify ways to rewrite it. *For example, see $x^4 - y^4$ as $(x^2)^2 - (y^2)^2$, thus recognizing it as a difference of squares that can be factored as $(x^2 - y^2)(x^2 + y^2)$.*

Write expressions in equivalent forms to solve problems.[84]

3. Choose and produce an equivalent form of an expression to reveal and explain properties of the quantity represented by the expression.*
   a. Factor a quadratic expression to reveal the zeros of the function it defines.*
   b. Complete the square in a quadratic expression to reveal the maximum or minimum value of the function it defines.*
   c. Use the properties of exponents to transform expressions for exponential functions. *For example the expression 1.15^t can be rewritten as $[1.15^{(1/12)}]^{(12t)} \approx 1.012^{(12t)}$ to reveal the approximate equivalent monthly interest rate if the annual rate is 15%.**

---

[81] Limit Mathematics II to i^2 as highest power of i.

[82] Limit Mathematics II to quadratic equations with real coefficients

★ Specific modeling standards appear through out the high school standards indicated by a star symbol (★). The star symbol appearing on the cluster heading should be understood to indicate that all standards in that cluster are modeling standards.

[83] Expand to include quadratics and exponential expressions

[84] Expand to include quadratic and exponential expressions

Arithmetic with Polynomials and Rational Expressions **A.APR**

Perform arithmetic operations on polynomials.[85]

1. Understand that polynomials form a system analogous to the integers, namely, they are closed under the operations of addition, subtraction, and multiplication; add, subtract, and multiply polynomials.

Creating Equations★ **A.CED**

Create equations that describe numbers or relationship.

1. Create equations and inequalities in one variable and use them to solve problems. *Include equations arising from linear and quadratic functions, and simple rational and exponential functions.**
2. Create equations in two or more variables to represent relationships between quantities; graph equations on coordinate axes with labels and scales.*
4. Rearrange formulas to highlight a quantity of interest, using the same reasoning as in solving equations. *For example, rearrange Ohm's law V = IR to highlight resistance R.**[86]

Reasoning with Equations and Inequalities **A.REI**

Solve equations and inequalities in one variable.[87]

4. Solve quadratic equations in one variable.
   a. Use the method of completing the square to transform any quadratic equation in x into an equation of the form $(x – p)^2 = q$ that has the same solutions. Derive the quadratic formula from this form.
   b. Solve quadratic equations by inspection (e.g., for $x^2 = 49$), taking square roots, completing the square, the quadratic formula and factoring, as appropriate to the initial form of the equation. Recognize when the quadratic formula gives complex solutions and write them as a ± bi for real numbers a and b.

   MA.4c Demonstrate an understanding of the equivalence of factoring, completing the square, or using the quadratic formula to solve quadratic equations.

Solve systems of equations.[88]

7. Solve a simple system consisting of a linear equation and a quadratic equation in two variables algebraically and graphically. For example, find the points of intersection between the line y = –3x and the circle $x^2 + y^2 = 3$.

Functions

Interpreting Functions **F.IF**

Interpret functions that arise in applications in terms of the context.[89]

4. For a function that models a relationship between two quantities, interpret key features of graphs and tables in terms of the quantities, and sketch graphs showing key features given a verbal description of the relationship. *Key features include: intercepts; intervals where the function is increasing, decreasing, positive, or negative; relative maximums and minimums; symmetries; end behavior; and periodicity.**

---

[85] Focus on adding and multiplying polynomial expressions; factor expressions to identify and collect like terms, and apply the distributive property.

★ Specific modeling standards appear through out the high school standards indicated by a star symbol (★). The star symbol appearing on the cluster heading should be understood to indicate that all standards in that cluster are modeling standards.

[86] Include formulas involving quadratic terms.

[87] Limit to quadratic equations with real coefficients.

[88] Expand to include linear/quadratic systems.

[89] Expand to include quadratic functions.

5. Relate the domain of a function to its graph and, where applicable, to the quantitative relationship it describes. *For example, if the function h(n) gives the number of person-hours it takes to assemble n engines in a factory, then the positive integers would be an appropriate domain for the function.**
6. Calculate and interpret the average rate of change of a function (presented symbolically or as a table) over a specified interval. Estimate the rate of change from a graph.*

Analyze functions using different representations.[90]

7. Graph functions expressed symbolically and show key features of the graph, by hand in simple cases and using technology for more complicated cases.★*
   a. Graph linear and quadratic functions and show intercepts, maxima, and minima.*
   b. Graph square root, cube root, and piecewise-defined functions, including step functions and absolute value functions.*
8. Write a function defined by an expression in different but equivalent forms to reveal and explain different properties of the function.
   a. Use the process of factoring and completing the square in a quadratic function to show zeros, extreme values, and symmetry of the graph, and interpret these in terms of a context.
   b. Use the properties of exponents to interpret expressions for exponential functions. *For example, identify percent rate of change in functions such as* $y = (1.02)^t$, $y = (0.97)^t$, $y = (1.01)^{(12t)}$, $y = (1.2)^{(t/10)}$, *and classify them as representing exponential growth and decay.*

   MA.8c Translate between different representations of functions and relations: graphs, equations, point sets, and tables.
9. Compare properties of two functions each represented in a different way (algebraically, graphically, numerically in tables, or by verbal descriptions). *For example, given a graph of one quadratic function and an algebraic expression for another, say which has the larger maximum.*

MA.10 Given algebraic, numeric, and/or graphical representations of functions, recognize functions as polynomial, rational, logarithmic, exponential or trigonometric.

Building Functions F.BF

Build a function that models a relationship between two quantities.[91]

1. Write a function that describes a relationship between two quantities.*
   a. Determine an explicit expression, a recursive process, or steps for calculation from a context.
   b. Combine standard function types using arithmetic operations. For example, build a function that models the temperature of a cooling body by adding a constant function to a decaying exponential, and relate these functions to the model.
   c. (+) Compose functions. *For example, if T(y) is the temperature in the atmosphere as a function of height, and h(t) is the height of a weather balloon as a function of time, then T(h(t)) is the temperature at the location of the weather balloon as a function of time.*

Build new functions from existing functions.[92]

3. Identify the effect on the graph of replacing f(x) by f(x) + k, k f(x), f(kx), and f(x + k) for specific values of k (both positive and negative); find the value of k given the graphs. Experiment with cases and illustrate an explanation of the effects on the graph using technology. *Include recognizing even and odd functions from their graphs and algebraic expressions for them.*
4. Find inverse functions.

---

[90] Limit Mathematics I to linear, exponential, quadratic, piecewise-defined, and absolute value functions.

★ Specific modeling standards appear through out the high school standards indicated by a star symbol (★). The star symbol appearing on the cluster heading should be understood to indicate that all standards in that cluster are modeling standards.

[91] Expand to include quadratic and exponential functions.

[92] Expand to include quadratic and absolute value functions.

a. Solve an equation of the form f(x) = c for a simple function f that has an inverse and write an expression for the inverse. *For example, $f(x) = 2(x^3)$ or $f(x) = (x+1)/(x-1)$ for $x \neq 1$ (x not equal to 1).*

Linear, Quadratic, and Exponential Models★ F.LE

Construct and compare linear, quadratic, and exponential models and solve problems.

3. Observe using graphs and tables that a quantity increasing exponentially eventually exceeds a quantity increasing linearly, quadratically, or (more generally) as a polynomial function.*

Trigonometric Functions F.TF

Prove and apply trigonometric identities.

8. Prove the Pythagorean identity $(\sin A)^2 + (\cos A)^2 = 1$ and use it to find sin A, cos A, or tan A, given sin A, cos A, or tan A, and the quadrant of the angle.

Geometry

Congruence G.CO

Prove geometric theorems.[93]

9. Prove theorems about lines and angles. *Theorems include: vertical angles are congruent; when a transversal crosses parallel lines, alternate interior angles are congruent and corresponding angles are congruent; points on a perpendicular bisector of a line segment are exactly those equidistant from the segment's endpoints.*
10. Prove theorems about triangles. *Theorems include: measures of interior angles of a triangle sum to 180 degrees; base angles of isosceles triangles are congruent; the segment joining midpoints of two sides of a triangle is parallel to the third side and half the length; the medians of a triangle meet at a point.*
11. Prove theorems about parallelograms. *Theorems include: opposite sides are congruent, opposite angles are congruent, the diagonals of a parallelogram bisect each other, and conversely, rectangles are parallelograms with congruent diagonals.*

    MA.11a. Prove theorems about polygons. *Theorems include: measures of interior and exterior angels, properties of inscribed polygons.*

Similarity, right Triangles, and Trigonometry G.SRT

Understand similarity in terms of similarity transformations

1. Verify experimentally the properties of dilations given by a center and a scale factor:
    a. A dilation takes a line not passing through the center of the dilation to a parallel line, and leaves a line passing through the center unchanged.
    b. The dilation of a line segment is longer or shorter in the ratio given by the scale factor.
2. Given two figures, use the definition of similarity in terms of similarity transformations to decide if they are similar; explain using similarity transformations the meaning of similarity for triangles as the equality of all corresponding pairs of angles and the proportionality of all corresponding pairs of sides.
3. Use the properties of similarity transformations to establish the AA criterion for two triangles to be similar.

Prove theorems involving similarity.[94]

4. Prove theorems about triangles. Theorems include: a line parallel to one side of a triangle divides the other two proportionally, and conversely; the Pythagorean Theorem proved using triangle similarity.

★ Specific modeling standards appear through out the high school standards indicated by a star symbol (★). The star symbol appearing on the cluster heading should be understood to indicate that all standards in that cluster are modeling standards.

[93] Focus on validity underlying reasoning and use a variety of ways of writing proofs

[94] Focus on validity underlying reasoning and use a variety of ways of writing proofs

5. Use congruence and similarity criteria for triangles to solve problems and to prove relationships in geometric figures.

Define trigonometric ratios and solve problems involving right triangles.

6. Understand that by similarity, side ratios in right triangles are properties of the angles in the triangle, leading to definitions of trigonometric ratios for acute angles.
7. Explain and use the relationship between the sine and cosine of complementary angles.
8. Use trigonometric ratios and the Pythagorean Theorem to solve right triangles in applied problems.

Circles G.C

Understand and apply theorems about circles.

1. Prove that all circles are similar.
2. Identify and describe relationships among inscribed angles, radii, and chords. Include the relationship between central, inscribed, and circumscribed angles; inscribed angles on a diameter are right angles; the radius of a circle is perpendicular to the tangent where the radius intersects the circle.
3. Construct the inscribed and circumscribed circles of a triangle, and prove properties of angles for a quadrilateral inscribed in a circle.
   MA.3a Derive the formula for the relationship between the number of sides and the sums of the interior and the sums of the exterior angles of polygons and apply to the solutions of mathematical and contextual problems.
4. (+) Construct a tangent line from a point outside a given circle to the circle.

Find arc lengths and areas of sectors of circles.

5. Derive using similarity the fact that the length of the arc intercepted by an angle is proportional to the radius, and define the radian measure of the angle as the constant of proportionality; derive the formula for the area of a sector.[95]

Expressing Geometric Properties with Equations G.GPE

Translate between the geometric description and the equation for a conic section.

1. Derive the equation of a circle of given center and radius using the Pythagorean Theorem; complete the square to find the center and radius of a circle given by an equation.
2. Derive the equation of a parabola given a focus and directrix.

Use coordinates to prove simple geometric theorems algebraically.

4. Use coordinates to prove simple geometric theorems algebraically. *For example, prove or disprove that a figure defined by four given points in the coordinate plane is a rectangle; prove or disprove that the point (1, √3) lies on the circle centered at the origin and containing the point (0, 2).* [96]
6. Find the point on a directed line segment between two given points that partitions the segment in a given ratio.

Geometric Measurement with Dimension G.GMD

Explain volume formulas and use them to solve problems.

1. Give an informal argument for the formulas for the circumference of a circle, area of a circle, volume of a cylinder, pyramid, and cone. Use dissection arguments, Cavalieri's principle, and informal limit arguments.
3. Use volume formulas for cylinders, pyramids, cones, and spheres to solve problems.*

---

[95] Limit Mathematics I use of radian to unit of measure
[96] Include simple circle theorems

Statistics and Probability★

Conditional Probability and the Rules of Probability S.CP

Understand independence and conditional probability and use them to interpret data[97]

1. Describe events as subsets of a sample space (the set of outcomes) using characteristics (or categories) of the outcomes, or as unions, intersections, or complements of other events ("or," "and," "not").*
2. Understand that two events A and B are independent if the probability of A and B occurring together is the product of their probabilities, and use this characterization to determine if they are independent.*
3. Understand the conditional probability of A given B as P(A and B)/P(B), and interpret independence of A and B as saying that the conditional probability of A given B is the same as the probability of A, and the conditional probability of B given A is the same as the probability of B.*
4. Construct and interpret two-way frequency tables of data when two categories are associated with each object being classified. Use the two-way table as a sample space to decide if events are independent and to approximate conditional probabilities. For example, collect data from a random sample of students in your school on their favorite subject among math, science, and English. Estimate the probability that a randomly selected student from your school will favor science given that the student is in tenth grade. Do the same for other subjects and compare the results.*
5. Recognize and explain the concepts of conditional probability and independence in everyday language and everyday situations. For example, compare the chance of having lung cancer if you are a smoker with the chance of being a smoker if you have lung cancer.*

Use the rules of probability to compute probabilities of compound events in a uniform probability model.

6. Find the conditional probability of A given B as the fraction of B's outcomes that also belong to A, and interpret the answer in terms of the model.*
7. Apply the Addition Rule, P(A or B) = P(A) + P(B) – P(A and B), and interpret the answer in terms of the model.*
8. (+) Apply the general Multiplication Rule in a uniform probability model, P(A and B) = [P(A)]x[P(B|A)] =[P(B)]x[P(A|B)], and interpret the answer in terms of the model.*
9. (+) Use permutations and combinations to compute probabilities of compound events and solve problems.*

Using Probability to Make Decisions S.MD

Use probability to evaluate outcomes of decisions.★[98]

6. (+) Use probabilities to make fair decision (e.g., drawing by lots, using a random number generator).
7. (+) Analyze decisions and strategies using probability concepts (e.g., product testing, medical testing, pulling a hockey goalie at the end of a game).

★ Specific modeling standards appear through out the high school standards indicated by a star symbol (★). The star symbol appearing on the cluster heading should be understood to indicate that all standards in that cluster are modeling standards.

[97] Link to data from simulations and/or experiments.

[98] Introductory only; apply counting rules.

Integrated Pathway: Mathematics III[99]

It is in Mathematics III that students pull together and apply the accumulation of learning that they have from their previous courses, with content grouped into four critical areas. They apply methods from probability and statistics to draw inferences and conclusions from data. Students expand their repertoire of functions to include polynomial, rational, and radical functions[100]. They expand their study of right triangle trigonometry to include general triangles. And, finally, students bring together all of their experience with functions and geometry to create models and solve contextual problems. The Mathematical Practice Standards apply throughout each course and, together with the content standards, prescribe that students experience mathematics as a coherent, useful, and logical subject that makes use of their ability to make sense of problem situations.

Critical Area 1: Students see how the visual displays and summary statistics they learned in earlier grades relate to different types of data and to probability distributions. They identify different ways of collecting data— including sample surveys, experiments, and simulations—and the role that randomness and careful design play in the conclusions that can be drawn.

Critical Area 2: The structural similarities between the system of polynomials and the system of integers are developed. Students draw on analogies between polynomial arithmetic and base-ten computation, focusing on properties of operations, particularly the distributive property. Students connect multiplication of polynomials with multiplication of multi-digit integers, and division of polynomials with long division of integers. Students identify zeros of polynomials and make connections between zeros of polynomials and solutions of polynomial equations. Rational numbers extend the arithmetic of integers by allowing division by all numbers except 0. Similarly, rational expressions extend the arithmetic of polynomials by allowing division by all polynomials except the zero polynomial. A central theme is that the arithmetic of rational expressions is governed by the same rules as the arithmetic of rational numbers. This critical area also includes and exploration of the Fundamental Theorem of Algebra

Critical Area 3: Students develop the Laws of Sines and Cosines in order to find missing measures of general (not necessarily right) triangles. They are able to distinguish whether three given measures (angles or sides) define 0, 1, 2, or infinitely many triangles. This discussion of general triangles open up the idea of trigonometry applied beyond the right triangle—that is, at least to obtuse angles. Students build on this idea to develop the notion of radian measure for angles and extend the domain of the trigonometric functions to all real numbers. They apply this knowledge to model simple periodic phenomena.

Critical Area 4: Students synthesize and generalize what they have learned about a variety of function families. They extend their work with exponential functions to include solving exponential equations with logarithms. They explore the effects of transformations on graphs of diverse functions, including functions arising in an application, in order to abstract the general principle that transformations on a graph always have the same effect regardless of the type of the underlying functions. They identify appropriate types of functions to model a situation, they adjust parameters to improve the model, and they compare models by analyzing appropriateness of fit and making judgments about the domain over which a model is a good fit. The description of modeling as “the process of choosing and using mathematics and statistics to analyze empirical situations, to understand them better, and to make decisions” is at the heart of this unit. The narrative discussion and diagram of the modeling cycle should be considered when knowledge of functions, statistics, and geometry is applied in a modeling context.

---

[99] **Adapted from** ***Appendix A: Designing High School Mathematics Course Based on the Common Core State Standards,*** **http://www.corestandards.org/the-standards**

[100] In this course, rational functions are limited to those whose numerators are of degree at most 1 and denominators are of degree at most 2; radical functions are limited to square roots or cube roots of at most quadratic polynomials.

Overview Mathematics III

Mathematical Practices

1. Make sense of problems and persevere in solving them.
2. Reason abstractly and quantitatively.
3. Construct viable arguments and critique the reasoning of others.
4. Model with mathematics.
5. Use appropriate tools strategically.
6. Attend to precision.
7. Look for and make use of structure.
8. Look for and express regularity in repeated reasoning.

Number and Quantity

The Complex Number System

- Use complex numbers in polynomial identities and equations

Algebra

Seeing Structure in Expressions

- Interpret the structure or expressions
- Write expressions in equivalent forms to solve problems

Arithmetic with Polynomials and Rational Expressions

- Perform arithmetic operations on polynomials
- Understand the relationship between zeros and factors of polynomials
- Use polynomial identities to solve problems
- Rewrite rational expressions

Creating Equations

- Create equations that describe numbers of relationships

Reasoning with Equations and Inequalities

- Understand solving equations as a process of reasoning and explain the reasoning
- Represent and solve equations and inequalities graphically

Functions

Interpreting Functions

- Interpret functions that arise in applications in terms of a context
- Analyze functions using different representations

Building Functions

- Build a function that models a relationship between two quantities
- Build new functions from existing functions

Linear, Quadratic, and Exponential Models

- Construct and compare linear, quadratic, and exponential models and solve problems

Trigonometric Functions

- Extend the domain of trigonometric functions using the unit circle
- Model periodic phenomena with trigonometric functions

Geometry

Similarity, Right Triangles, and Trigonometry

- Apply trigonometry to right triangles

Geometric Measurement and Dimension

- Visualize the relationship between two- and three- dimensional objects

Modeling with Geometry

- Apply Geometric concepts in modeling situations

Statistics and Probability

Interpreting Categorical and Quantitative Data

- Summarize, represent, and interpret data on a single or measurement variable

Making Inferences and Justifying Conclusions

- Understand and evaluate random processes underlying statistical experiments
- Make inferences and justify conclusions from sample surveys experiments and observational studies.

Using Probability to Make Decisions

- Use probabilities to evaluate outcomes of decisions

Number and Quantity

The Complex Number System **N.CN**

Use complex numbers in polynomial identities and equations.[101]

8. (+) Extend polynomial identities to the complex numbers. For example, rewrite $x^2 + 4$ as $(x + 2i)(x – 2i)$.
9. (+) Know the Fundamental Theorem of Algebra; show that it is true for quadratic polynomials.[102]

Algebra

Seeing Structure in Expressions★[103] **A.SSE**

Interpret the structure of expressions.

1. Interpret expressions that represent a quantity in terms of its context.*
   a. Interpret parts of an expression, such as terms, factors, and coefficients.*
   b. Interpret complicated expressions by viewing one or more of their parts as a single entity. For example, interpret $P(1+r)^n$ as the product of P and a factor not depending on P.*
2. Use the structure of an expression to identify ways to rewrite it. For example, see $x^4 – y^4$ as $(x^2)^2 – (y^2)^2$, thus recognizing it as a difference of squares that can be factored as $(x^2 – y^2)(x^2 + y^2)$.

Write expressions in equivalent forms to solve problems.

4. Derive the formula for the sum of a finite geometric series (when the common ration is not 1), and use the formula to solve problems. For example, calculate mortgage payments.

Arithmetic with Polynomials and Rational Expressions **A.APR**

Perform arithmetic operations on polynomials.

1. Understand that polynomials form a system analogous to the integers, namely, they are closed under the operations of addition, subtraction, and multiplication; add, subtract, and multiply polynomials.
   MA.1.a. Divide polynomials.
2. Understand the relationship between zeros and factors of polynomial. Know and apply the Remainder Theorem: For a polynomial p(x) and a number a, the remainder on division by x – a is p(a), so p(a) = 0 if and only if (x – a) is a factor of p(x).
3. Understand the relationship between zeros and factors of polynomials. Identify zeros of polynomials when suitable factorizations are available, and use the zeros to construct a rough graph of the function defined by the polynomial.

Use polynomial identities to solve problems.

4. Prove polynomial identities and use them to describe numerical relationships. For example, the polynomial identity $(x^2 + y^2)^2 = (x^2 – y^2)^2 + (2xy)^2$ can be used to generate Pythagorean triples.
5. (+) Know and apply that the Binomial Theorem gives the expansion of $(x + y)^n$ in powers of x and y for a positive integer n, where x and y are any numbers, with coefficients determined for example by Pascal’s Triangle. (The Binomial Theorem can be proved by mathematical induction or by a combinatorial argument.)

Rewrite rational expressions.[104]

6. Rewrite simple rational expressions in different forms; write a(x)/b(x) in the form q(x) + r(x)/b(x), where a(x), b(x), q(x), and r(x) are polynomials with the degree of r(x) less than the degree of b(x), using inspection, long division, or, for the more complicated examples, a computer algebra system.

---

[101] Limit Mathematics III to polynomials with real coefficients

[102] Expand to include higher degree polynomials

★ Specific modeling standards appear through out the high school standards indicated by a star symbol (★). The star symbol appearing on the cluster heading should be understood to indicate that all standards in that cluster are modeling standards.

[103] Expand to polynomial and rational expressions.

[104] Focus on linear and quadratic denominators

7. (+) Understand that rational expressions form a system analogous to the rational numbers, closed under addition, subtraction, multiplication, and division by a nonzero rational expression; add, subtract, multiply, and divide rational expressions.

Creating Equations★ **A.CED**

Create equations that describe numbers or relationship.[105]

1. Create equations and inequalities in one variable and use them to solve problems. *Include equations arising from linear and quadratic functions, and simple rational and exponential functions.**
2. Create equations in two or more variables to represent relationships between quantities; graph equations on coordinate axes with labels and scales.*
3. Represent constraints by equations or inequalities, and by systems of equations and/or inequalities, and interpret solutions as viable or non-viable options in a modeling context. For example, represent inequalities describing nutritional and cost constraints on combinations of different foods.*
4. Rearrange formulas to highlight a quantity of interest, using the same reasoning as in solving equations. *For example, rearrange Ohm's law V = IR to highlight resistance R.**

Reasoning with Equations and Inequalities **A.REI**

Understand solving equations as a process of reasoning and explain the reasoning.

2. Solve simple rational and radical equations in one variable, and give examples showing how extraneous solutions may arise.

Represent and solve equations and inequalities graphically.

11. Explain why the x-coordinates of the points where the graphs of the equations $y = f(x)$ and $y = g(x)$ intersect are the solutions of the equation $f(x) = g(x)$; find the solutions approximately, e.g., using technology to graph the functions, make tables of values, or find successive approximations. Include cases where $f(x)$ and/or $g(x)$ are linear, polynomial, rational, absolute value, exponential, and logarithmic functions.*

Functions

Interpreting Functions **F.IF**

Interpret functions that arise in applications in terms of the context.[106]

4. For a function that models a relationship between two quantities, interpret key features of graphs and tables in terms of the quantities, and sketch graphs showing key features given a verbal description of the relationship. Key features include: intercepts; intervals where the function is increasing, decreasing, positive, or negative; relative maximums and minimums; symmetries; end behavior; and periodicity.*
5. Relate the domain of a function to its graph and, where applicable, to the quantitative relationship it describes. For example, if the function h(n) gives the number of person-hours it takes to assemble n engines in a factory, then the positive integers would be an appropriate domain for the function.*
6. Calculate and interpret the average rate of change of a function (presented symbolically or as a table) over a specified interval. Estimate the rate of change from a graph.*

Analyze functions using different representations.[107]

7. Graph functions expressed symbolically and show key features of the graph, by hand in simple cases and using technology for more complicated cases.*

★ Specific modeling standards appear through out the high school standards indicated by a star symbol (★). The star symbol appearing on the cluster heading should be understood to indicate that all standards in that cluster are modeling standards.

[105] Expand to include simple root functions.

[106] Emphasize the selection of appropriate function model; expand to include rational functions, square and cube functions.

[107] Expand to include rational and radical functions; focus on using key features to guide selection of appropriate type of function model.

b. Graph square root, cube root, and piecewise-defined functions, including step functions and absolute value functions.*

c. Graph polynomial functions, identifying zeros when suitable factorizations are available, and showing end behavior.*

e. Graph exponential and logarithmic functions, showing intercepts and end behavior, and trigonometric functions, showing period, midline, and amplitude.*

8. Write a function defined by an expression in different but equivalent forms to reveal and explain different properties of the function.

   a. Use the process of factoring and completing the square in a quadratic function to show zeros, extreme values, and symmetry of the graph, and interpret these in terms of a context.

   b. Use the properties of exponents to interpret expressions for exponential functions. For example, identify percent rate of change in functions such as y = (1.02)^t, y = (0.97)^t, y = (1.01)^(12t), y = (1.2)^(t/10), and classify them as representing exponential growth and decay.

   MA.8a. Translate between different representations of functions and relations: graphs, equations, point sets, and tables.

9. Compare properties of two functions each represented in a different way (algebraically, graphically, numerically in tables, or by verbal descriptions). For example, given a graph of one quadratic function and an algebraic expression for another, say which has the larger maximum.

Building Functions F.BF

Build a function that models a relationship between two quantities.

1. Write a function that describes a relationship between two quantities.*★

   b. Combine standard function types using arithmetic operations. For example, build a function that models the temperature of a cooling body by adding a constant function to a decaying exponential, and relate these functions to the model.

Build new functions from existing functions.[108]

3. Identify the effect on the graph of replacing f(x) by f(x) + k, k f(x), f(kx), and f(x + k) for specific values of k (both positive and negative); find the value of k given the graphs. Experiment with cases and illustrate an explanation of the effects on the graph using technology. Include recognizing even and odd functions from their graphs and algebraic expressions for them.

4. Find inverse functions.

   a. Solve an equation of the form f(x) = c for a simple function f that has an inverse and write an expression for the inverse. For example, f(x) =2(x^3) or f(x) = (x+1)/(x-1) for x ≠ 1 (x not equal to 1).

Linear, Quadratic, and Exponential Models F.LE

Construct and compare linear, quadratic, and exponential models and solve problems.[109]

4. For exponential models, express as a logarithm the solution to $ab^{(ct)} = d$ where a, c, and d are numbers and the base b is 2, 10, or e; evaluate the logarithm using technology.*

Trigonometric Functions F.TF

Extend the domain of trigonometric functions using the unit circle.

1. Understand radian measure of an angle as the length of the arc on the unit circle subtended by the angle.

★ Specific modeling standards appear through out the high school standards indicated by a star symbol (★). The star symbol appearing on the cluster heading should be understood to indicate that all standards in that cluster are modeling standards.

[108] Expand to include simple radical, rational and exponential functions; emphasize common effect of each transformation across function types.

[109] Only include logarithms as solutions of exponential functions.

2. Explain how the unit circle in the coordinate plane enables the extension of trigonometric functions to all real numbers, interpreted as radian measures of angles traversed counterclockwise around the unit circle.

Model periodic phenomena with trigonometric functions.

5. Choose trigonometric functions to model periodic phenomena with specified amplitude, frequency, and midline.*

Geometry

Similarity, Right Triangles, and Trigonometry **G.SRT**

Apply trigonometry to general triangles.

9. (+) Derive the formula A = (1/2)ab sin(C) for the area of a triangle by drawing an auxiliary line from a vertex perpendicular to the opposite side.
10. (+) Prove the Laws of Sines and Cosines and use them to solve problems.
11. (+) Apply trigonometry to general triangles. Understand and apply the Law of Sines and the Law of Cosines to find unknown measurements in right and non-right triangles (e.g., surveying problems, resultant forces).

Geometric Measurement and Dimension **G.GMD**

Visualize relationships between two-dimensional and three-dimensional objects.

4. Identify the shapes of two-dimensional cross-sections of three-dimensional objects, and identify three-dimensional objects generated by rotations of two-dimensional objects.

Modeling with Geometry★ **G.MG**

Apply geometric concepts in modeling situations.

1. Use geometric shapes, their measures, and their properties to describe objects (e.g., modeling a tree trunk or a human torso as a cylinder).*
2. Apply concepts of density based on area and volume in modeling situations (e.g., persons per square mile, BTUs per cubic foot).*
3. Apply geometric methods to solve design problems (e.g., designing an object or structure to satisfy physical constraints or minimize cost; working with typographic grid systems based on ratios).*

MA.4 Use dimensional analysis for unit conversion to confirm that expressions and equations make sense.*

Statistics and Probability

Interpreting Categorical and Quantitative Data **S.ID**

Summarize, represent, and interpret data on a single count or measurement variable.

4. Use the mean and standard deviation of a data set to fit it to a normal distribution and to estimate population percentages. Recognize that there are data sets for which such a procedure is not appropriate. Use calculators, spreadsheets, and tables to estimate areas under the normal curve.*

Making Inferences and Justifying Conclusions **S.IC**

Understand and evaluate random processes underlying statistical experiments.

1. Understand statistics as a process for making inferences about population parameters based on a random sample from that population.*
2. Decide if a specified model is consistent with results from a given data-generating process, e.g., using simulation. *For example, a model says a spinning coin falls heads up with probability 0. 5. Would a result of 5 tails in a row cause you to question the model.**

★ Specific modeling standards appear through out the high school standards indicated by a star symbol (★). The star symbol appearing on the cluster heading should be understood to indicate that all standards in that cluster are modeling standards.

Make inferences and justify conclusions from sample surveys, experiments, and observational studies.

3. Recognize the purposes of and differences among sample surveys, experiments, and observational studies; explain how randomization relates to each.*
4. Use data from a sample survey to estimate a population mean or proportion; develop a margin of error through the use of simulation models for random sampling.*
5. Use data from a randomized experiment to compare two treatments; use simulations to decide if differences between parameters are significant.*
6. Evaluate reports based on data.*

Using Probability to Make Decisions **S.MD**

Use probability to evaluate outcomes of decisions

6. (+) Use probabilities to make fair decisions (e.g., drawing by lots, using a random number generator).*
7. (+) Analyze decisions and strategies using probability concepts (e.g., product testing, medical testing, pulling a hockey goalie at the end of a game).*

Additional Courses: Precalculus

Precalculus combines the trigonometric, geometric, and algebraic techniques needed to prepare students for the study of calculus and strengthens their conceptual understanding of problems and mathematical reasoning in solving problems. Facility with these topics is especially important for students intending to study calculus, physics and other sciences, and engineering in college. As with the other courses, the Mathematical Practice Standards apply throughout this course, and together with the content standards, prescribe that students experience mathematics as a coherent, useful, and logical subject that makes use of their ability to make sense of problem situations.

Critical Area 1: Students continue their work with complex numbers. They perform arithmetic operations with complex numbers and represent them and the operations on the complex plane. The student will investigate and identify the characteristics of the graphs of polar equations, using graphing utilities. This will include classification of polar equations, the effects of changes in the parameters in polar equations, conversion of complex numbers from rectangular form to polar form and vice versa, and the intersection of the graphs of polar equations.

Critical Area 2: Students expand their understanding of functions to include logarithmic and trigonometric functions. The student will investigate and identify the characteristics of exponential and logarithmic functions in order to graph these functions and solve equations and practical problems. This will include the role of *e*, natural and common logarithms, laws of exponents and logarithms, and the solution of logarithmic and exponential equations. They model periodic phenomena with trigonometric functions and prove trigonometric identities. Other trigonometric topics include reviewing unit circle trigonometry, proving trigonometric identities, solving trigonometric equations and graphing trigonometric functions.

Critical Area 3: Student will investigate and identify the characteristics of polynomial and rational functions and use these to sketch the graphs of the functions. They will determine zeros, upper and lower bounds, *y*-intercepts, symmetry, asymptotes, intervals for which the function is increasing or decreasing, and maximum or minimum points. Students translate between the geometric description and equation of conic sections. They deepen their understanding of the Fundamental Theorem of Algebra.

Critical Area 4: The student will perform operations with vectors in the coordinate plane and solve practical problems using vectors. This will include the following topics: operations of addition, subtraction, scalar multiplication, and inner (dot) product; norm of a vector; unit vector; graphing; properties; simple proofs; complex numbers (as vectors); and perpendicular components.

Precalculus Overview

Number and Quantity

The Complex Number System

- Perform arithmetic operations with complex numbers
- Represent complex numbers and their operations on the complex plane
- Use complex numbers in polynomial identities and equations

Vector and Matrix Quantities

- Represent and model with vector quantities
- Perform operations on vectors
- Perform operations on matrices and use matrices in applications

Algebra

Arithmetic with Polynomials and Rational Expressions

- Use polynomial identities to solve problems
- Rewrite rational expressions

Reasoning with Equations and Inequalities

- Solve systems of equations

Functions

Interpreting Functions

- Analyze functions using different representations

Building Functions

- Build a function that models a relationship between two quantities
- Build a new function from existing functions

Trigonometric Functions

- Extend the domain of trigonometric functions using the unit circle
- Model periodic phenomena with trigonometric functions
- Prove and apply trigonometric identities

Geometry

Similarity, Right Triangles, and Trigonometry

- Apply trigonometry to general triangles

Circles

- Understand and apply theorems about circles

Expressing Geometric Properties with Equations

- Translate between the geometric description and the equations for a conic section

Geometric Measurement and Dimension

- Explain Volume formulas and use them to solve problems
- Visualize relationships between two- and three-dimensional objects

Mathematical Practices

1. Make sense of problems and persevere in solving them.
2. Reason abstractly and quantitatively.
3. Construct viable arguments and critique the reasoning of others.
4. Model with mathematics.
5. Use appropriate tools strategically.
6. Attend to precision.
7. Look for and make use of structure.
8. Look for and express regularity in repeated reasoning.

Number and Quantity

The Complex Number System **N.CN**

Perform arithmetic operations with complex numbers.

3. (+) Find the conjugate of a complex number; use conjugates to find moduli and quotients of complex numbers.

Represent complex numbers and their operations on the complex plane.

4. (+) Represent complex numbers on the complex plane in rectangular and polar form (including real and imaginary numbers), and explain why the rectangular and polar forms of a given complex numbers represent the same number.
5. (+) Represent addition, subtraction, multiplication, and conjugation of complex numbers geometrically on the complex plane; use properties of this representation for computation. *For example,* $\left(1-\sqrt{3}i\right)^3 = 8$ *has modulus 2 and argument 120^o.*
6. (+) Calculate the distance between numbers in the complex plane as the modulus of the difference, and the midpoint of a segment as the average of the numbers at its endpoints.

Use complex numbers in polynomial identities and equations

8. (+) Extend polynomial identities to the complex numbers. For example, rewrite $x^2 + 4$ as $(x + 2i)(x – 2i)$.
9. (+) Know the Fundamental Theorem of Algebra; show that it is true for quadratic polynomials.

Vector Quantities and Matrices **N.VM**

Represent and model with vector quantities.

1. (+) Recognize vector quantities as having both magnitude and direction. Represent vector quantities by directed line segments, and use appropriate symbols for vectors and their magnitudes (e.g., **v**, |**v**|, ||**v**||, v).
2. (+) Find the components of a vector by subtracting the coordinates of an initial point from the coordinates of a terminal point.
3. (+) Solve problems involving velocity and the other quantities that can be represented by vectors.

Perform operations on vectors.

4. (+) Add and subtract vectors.
   a. (+) Add vectors end-to-end, component-wise, and by the parallelogram rule. Understand that the magnitude of a sum of two vectors is typically no the sum of the magnitudes.
   b. (+) Given two vectors in magnitude and direction form, determine the magnitude and direction of their sum.
   c. (+) Understand vector subtraction **v** – **w** as **v** + (–**w**), where (–**w**) is the additive inverse of **w**, with the same magnitude as **w** and pointing in the opposite direction. Represent vector subtraction graphically by connecting the tips in the appropriate order, and perform vector subtraction component-wise.
5. (+) Multiply a vector by a scalar.
   a. (+) Represent scalar multiplication graphically by scaling vectors and possibly reversing their direction; perform scalar vectors and possibly reversing their direction; perform scalar multiplication component-wise, e.g., as $c(v_x,v_y) = (cv_x, cv_y)$.
   b. (+) Compute the magnitude of a scalar multiple c**v** using ||c**v**|| = |c|**v**. Compute the direction of cv knowing that when |c|**v** $\neq$ 0, the direction of cv is either along v (for c > 0) or against **v** (for c < 0).

Perform operations on matrices and use matrices in applications.

6. (+) Use matrices to represent and manipulate data, e.g., to represent payoffs or incidence relationships in a network.
7. (+) Multiply matrices by scalars to produce new matrices, e.g., as when all of the payoffs in a game are doubled.
8. (+) Add, subtract, and multiply matrices of appropriate dimensions.
9. (+) Understand that, unlike multiplication of numbers, matrix multiplication for square matrices is not a commutative operation, but still satisfies the associative and distributive properties.

10. (+) Understand that the zero and identity matrices play a role in matrix addition and multiplication similar to the role of 0 and 1 in the real numbers. The determinant of a square matrix is nonzero if and only if the matrix has a multiplicative inverse.
11. (+) Multiply a vector (regarded as a matrix with one column) by a matrix of suitable dimensions to produce another vector. Work with matrices as transformations of vectors.
12. (+) Work with 2 x 2 matrices as transformations of the plane, and interpret the absolute value of the determinate in terms of area.

Algebra
Arithmetic with polynomials and rational expressions **A.APR**
Use polynomial identities to solve problems

5. (+) Know and apply the Binomial Theorem for the expansion of $(x + y)^n$ in powers of x and y for a positive integer n, where x and y are any numbers, with coefficients determined, for example, by Pascal's Triangle.[110]

Rewrite rational expressions

6. Rewrite simple rational expressions in different forms; write a(x)/b(x) in the form q(x) + r(x)/b(x), where a(x), b(x), q(x), and r(x) are polynomials with the degree of r(x) less than the degree of b(x), using inspection, long division, or, for the more complicated examples, a computer algebra system.
7. (+) Understand that rational expressions form a system analogous to the rational numbers, closed under addition, subtraction, multiplication, and division by a nonzero rational expression; add, subtract, multiply, and divide rational expressions.

Reasoning with Equations and Inequalities **A.REI**
Solve systems of equations

8. (+) Represent a system of linear equations as a single matrix equation in a vector variable.
9. (+) Find the inverse of a matrix if it exists and use it to solve systems of linear equations (using technology for matrices of dimension 3 × 3 or greater).

Functions
Interpreting Functions **F.IF**
Analyze functions using different representations

7. (+) Graph functions expressed symbolically and show key features of the graph, by hand in simple cases and using technology for more complicated cases. ★
   d. (+) Graph rational functions, identifying zeros when suitable factorizations are available, and showing end behavior.

Building Functions **F.BF**
Build a function that models a relationship between two quantities

1. Write a function that describes a relationship between two quantities.*
   c. (+) Compose functions. *For example, if T(y) is the temperature in the atmosphere as a function of height, and h(t) is the height of a weather balloon as a function of time, then T(h(t)) is the temperature at the location of the weather balloon as the function of time.*

Build new functions from existing functions

4. Find inverse functions.
   b. (+) Verify by composition that one function is the inverse of another.
   c. (+) Read values of an inverse function from a graph or a table, given that the function has an inverse.
   d. (+) Produce an invertible function from a non-invertible function by restricting the domain.
5. (+) Understand the inverse relationship between exponents and logarithms and use this relationship to solve problems involving logarithms and exponents.

[110] The Binomial Theorem can be proved by mathematical induction or by a combinatorial argument.

Trigonometric Functions **F.TF**

Extend the domain of trigonometric functions using the unit circle

3. (+) Use special triangles to determine geometrically the values of sine, cosine, tangent for $\pi/3$, $\pi/4$ and $\pi/6$, and use the unit circle to express the values of sine, cosines, and tangent for x, π+x, and 2π-x in terms of their values for x, where x is any real number.
4. (+) Use the unit circle to explain symmetry (odd and even) and periodicity of trigonometric functions.

Model periodic phenomena with trigonometric functions

6. (+) Understand that restricting a trigonometric function to a domain on which it is always increasing or always decreasing allows its inverse to be constructed.
7. (+) Use inverse functions to solve trigonometric equations that arise in modeling contexts; evaluate the solutions using technology, and interpret them in terms of the context.★

Prove and apply trigonometric identities

9. (+) Prove the addition and subtraction formulas for sine, cosine, and tangent and use them to solve problems.

Geometry

Similarity, right triangles, and trigonometry **G.SRT**

Apply trigonometry to general triangles

9. (+) Derive the formula A = ½ ab sin(C) for the area of a triangle by drawing an auxiliary line form a vertex perpendicular to the opposite side.
10. (+) prove the Laws of Sines and Cosines and use them to solve problems.
11. (+) Understand and apply the Laws of Sines and Cosines to find unknown measurements in right and non-right triangles, e.g., surveying problems, resultant forces.

Circles **G.C**

Understand and apply theorems about circles

4. (+) Construct a tangent line from a point outside a given circle to the circle.

Expressing Geometric Properties with Equations **G.GPE**

Translate between the geometric description and the equation for a conic section

3. (+) Derive the equations of ellipses and hyperbolas given the foci, using the fact that the sum of difference of distances from the foci is constant.
   MA.3a (+) Use equations and graphs of conic sections to model real world problems.

Geometric Measurement and Dimension **G.GMD**

Explain volume formulas and use them to solve problems

2. (+) Give an informal argument using Cavalieri's Principle for the formulas for the volume of a sphere and other solid figures.

Visualize relationships between two-dimensional and three-dimensional objects

4. Identify the shapes of two-dimensional cross-sections of three-dimensional objects, and identify three-dimensional objects generated by rotations of two-dimensional objects.

Additional Courses: Advanced Quantitative Reasoning

Because the standards for this course are (+) standards, students taking Advanced Quantitative Reasoning will have completed the three courses Algebra I, Geometry and Algebra II in the traditional Pathway, or the three courses Mathematics I, II, and II in the Integrated Pathway. This course is designed as a mathematics course alternative to Precalculus. Students not preparing for Calculus are encouraged to continue their study of mathematical ideas in the context of real-world problems and decision making through the analysis of information, modeling change and mathematical relationships. As with the other courses, the Mathematical Practice Standards apply throughout this course, and together with the content standards, prescribe that students experience mathematics as a coherent, useful, and logical subject that makes use of their ability to make sense of problem situations.

Critical Area 1: Students will learn to become critical consumers of the quantitative data that surround them every day, knowledgeable decision makers who use logical reasoning, and mathematical thinkers who can use their quantitative skills to solve problems related to a wide range of situations. They will link classroom mathematics and statistics to everyday life, work, and decision-making, using mathematical modeling. They will choose and use appropriate mathematics and statistics to analyze empirical situations, to understand them better, and to improve decisions.

Critical Area 2: Through the investigation of mathematical models from real life situations, students will strengthen conceptual understandings in mathematics and further develop connections between algebra and geometry. Students will use geometry to model real-world problems and solutions. They will use the language and symbols of mathematics in representations and communication.

Critical Area 3: Students will explore linear algebra concepts of matrices and vectors. They use vectors to model physical relationships to define, model, and solve real-world problems. Students draw, name, label, and describe vectors and perform operations with vectors and relate these components to vector magnitude and direction. They will use matrices in relationship to vectors and to solve problems.

Advanced Quantitative Reasoning Overview

Number and Quantity

Vector and Matrix Quantities

- Represent and model with vector quantities
- Perform operations on matrices and use matrices in applications

Algebra

Arithmetic with Polynomials and Expressions

- Use polynomials to solve problems
- Solve systems of equations

Functions

Trigonometric Functions

- Extend the domain of trigonometric functions using the unit circle
- Model periodic phenomena with trigonometric functions

Geometry

Similarity, Right Triangles, and Trigonometry

- Apply trigonometry to general triangles

Geometric Measurement and Dimension

- Explain volume formulas and use them to solve problems

Statistics and Probability

Interpreting Categorical and Quantitative Data

- Summarize, represent, and interpret data on two categorical and quantitative variables
- Interpret linear models

Making Inferences and Justifying Conclusions

- Make inferences and justify conclusions from sample surveys, experiments, and observational studies

Conditional Probability and the Rules of Probability

- Use the rules of probability to compute probabilities of compound events in a uniform probability model
- Calculate expected values and use them to solve problems

Mathematical Practices

1. Make sense of problems and persevere in solving them.
2. Reason abstractly and quantitatively.
3. Construct viable arguments and critique the reasoning of others.
4. Model with mathematics.
5. Use appropriate tools strategically.
6. Attend to precision.
7. Look for and make use of structure.
8. Look for and express regularity in repeated reasoning.

Number and Quantity

Vectors and Matrix Quantities **N.VM**

Represent and model with vector quantities

1. (+) Recognize vector quantities as having both magnitude and direction. Represent vector quantities by directed line segments, and use appropriate symbols for vectors and their magnitudes (e.g., **v**, |**v**|, ||**v**||, v).
2. (+) Find the components of a vector by subtracting the coordinates of an initial point from the coordinates of a terminal point.
3. (+) Solve problems involving velocity and the other quantities that can be represented by vectors.

Perform operations on matrices and use matrices in applications.

6. (+) Use matrices to represent and manipulate data, e.g., to represent payoffs or incidence relationships in a network.
7. (+) Multiply matrices by scalars to produce new matrices, e.g., as when all of the payoffs in a game are doubled.
8. (+) Add, subtract, and multiply matrices of appropriate dimensions.
9. (+) Understand that, unlike multiplication of numbers, matrix multiplication for square matrices is not a commutative operation, but still satisfies the associative and distributive properties.
10. (+) Understand that the zero and identity matrices play a role in matrix addition and multiplication similar to the role of 0 and 1 in the real numbers. The determinant of a square matrix is nonzero if and only if the matrix has a multiplicative inverse.
11. (+) Multiply a vector (regarded as a matrix with one column) by a matrix of suitable dimensions to produce another vector. Work with matrices as transformations of vectors.
12. (+) Work with 2 x 2 matrices as transformations of the plane, and interpret the absolute value of the determinate in terms of area.

Algebra

Arithmetic with polynomials and rational expressions **A.APR**

Use polynomial identities to solve problems

5. (+) Know and apply the Binomial Theorem for the expansion of $(x + y)^n$ in powers of x and y for a positive integer n, where x and y are any numbers, with coefficients determined, for example, by Pascal's Triangle.[111]

Reasoning with Equations and Inequalities **A.REI**

Solve systems of equations

8. (+) Represent a system of linear equations as a single matrix equation in a vector variable.
9. (+) Find the inverse of a matrix if it exists and use it to solve systems of linear equations (using technology for matrices of dimension 3 × 3 or greater).

Functions

Trigonometric Functions **F.TF**

Extend the domain of trigonometric functions using the unit circle

3. (+) Use special triangles to determine geometrically the values of sine, cosine, tangent for $\pi/3$, $\pi/4$ and $\pi/6$, and use the unit circle to express the values of sine, cosines, and tangent for x, π+x, and 2π-x in terms of their values for x, where x is any real number.
4. (+) Use the unit circle to explain symmetry (odd and even) and periodicity of trigonometric functions.

Model periodic phenomena with trigonometric functions

5. Choose trigonometric functions to model periodic phenomena with specified amplitude, frequency, and midline. ★

[111] The Binomial Theorem can be proved by mathematical induction or by a combinatorial argument.

7. (+) Use inverse functions to solve trigonometric equations that arise in modeling contexts; evaluate the solutions using technology, and interpret them in terms of the context.★

Prove[112] and apply trigonometric identities

9. (+) Prove the addition and subtraction formulas for sine, cosine, and tangent and use them to solve problems.

Geometry

Similarity, right triangles, and trigonometry G.SRT

Apply trigonometry to general triangles

11. (+) Understand and apply the Laws of Sines and Cosines to find unknown measurements in right and non-right triangles, e.g., surveying problems, resultant forces.

Circles G.C

Understand and apply theorems about circles

4. (+) Construct a tangent line from a point outside a given circle to the circle.

Expressing Geometric Properties with Equations G.GPE

Translate between the geometric description and the equation for a conic section

3. (+) Derive the equations of ellipses and hyperbolas given the foci and directrices.
   MA.9-12.G.GPE.3a Use equations and graphs of conic sections to model real-world problems. ★

Geometric Measurement and Dimension G.GMD

Explain volume formulas and use them to solve problems

2. (+) Give an informal argument using Cavalieri's Principle for the formulas for the volume of a sphere and other solid figures.

Visualize relationships between two-dimensional and three-dimensional objects

4. Identify the shapes of two-dimensional cross-sections of three-dimensional objects, and identify three-dimensional objects generated by rotations of two-dimensional objects.

Modeling with Geometry G.MG

Apply geometric concepts in modeling situations

3. Apply geometric methods to solve design problems (e.g., designing an object or structure to satisfy physical constraints or minimize cost; working with typographic grid systems based on ratios).★

MA.4. Use dimensional analysis for unit conversion to confirm that expressions and equations make sense.★

Statistics and Probability

Interpreting Categorical and Quantitative Data S.ID

Interpret linear models

9. Distinguish between correlation and causation.

Making Inferences and Justifying Conclusions S.IC

Make inferences and justify conclusions from sample surveys, experiments, and observational studies.

4. Use data from a sample survey to estimate a population mean or proportion; develop margin of error through the use of simulation models for random sampling.
5. Use data from a randomized experiment to compare two treatments; sue simulations to decide if differences between parameters are significant.

---

[112] In Advanced Quantitative Reasoning, should accept informal proof and focus on the underlying reasoning and use the theorems to solve problems.

6. Evaluate reports based on data.

Conditional Probability and the Rules of Probability **S.CP**

Use the rules of probability to compute probabilities of compound events in a uniform probability model.

8. (+) Apply the general Multiplication Rule in a uniform probability model, P(A and B) = P(A) P(B|A) = P(B) P(A|B), and interpret the answer in terms of the model.
9. (+) Use permutations and combinations to compute probabilities of compound events and solve problems.

Using Probability to Make Decisions **S.MD**

Calculate expected values and use them to solve problems

1. (+) Define a random variable for a quantity of interest by assigning a numerical value to each event in a sample space; graph the corresponding probability distribution using the same graphical displays as for data distributions.*
2. (+) Calculate the expected value of a random variable; interpret it as the mean of the probability distribution.*
3. (+) Develop a probability distribution for a random variable defined for a sample space in which theoretical probabilities can be calculated; find the expected value. For example, find the theoretical probability distribution for the number of correct answers obtained by guessing on all five questions of a multiple-choice test where each question has four choices, and find the expected grade under various grading schemes.*
4. (+) Develop a probability distribution for a random variable defined for a sample space in which probabilities are assigned empirically; find the expected value. For example, find a current data distribution on the number of TV sets per household in the United States, and calculate the expected number of sets per household. How many TV sets would you expect to find in 100 randomly selected households?*

Use probability to evaluate outcomes of decisions.

5. (+) Weigh the possible outcomes of a decision by assigning probabilities to payoff values and finding expected values.*
   a (+) Find the expected payoff for a game of chance. For example, find the expected winnings from a state lottery ticket or a game at a fast-food restaurant.*
   b (+) Evaluate and compare strategies on the basis of expected values. For example, compare a high-deductible versus a low-deductible automobile insurance policy using various, but reasonable, chances of having a minor or a major accident.*
6. (+) Use probabilities to make fair decisions (e.g., drawing by lots, using a random number generator).*
7. (+) Analyze decisions and strategies using probability concepts (e.g., product testing, medical testing, pulling a hockey goalie at the end of a game).*

Appendix I: Application of Common Core State Standards for English Language Learners

The National Governors Association Center for Best Practices and the Council of Chief State School Officers strongly believe that all students should be held to the same high expectations outlined in the Common Core State Standards. This includes students who are English language learners (ELLs). However, these students may require additional time, appropriate instructional support, and aligned assessments as they acquire both English language proficiency and content area knowledge.

ELLs are a heterogeneous group with differences in ethnic background, first language, socioeconomic status, quality of prior schooling, and levels of English language proficiency. Effectively educating these students requires diagnosing each student instructionally, adjusting instruction accordingly, and closely monitoring student progress. For example, ELLs who are literate in a first language that shares cognates with English can apply first-language vocabulary knowledge when reading in English; likewise ELLs with high levels of schooling can often bring to bear conceptual knowledge developed in their first language when reading in English. However, ELLs with limited or interrupted schooling will need to acquire background knowledge prerequisite to educational tasks at hand. Additionally, the development of native like proficiency in English takes many years and will not be achieved by all ELLs especially if they start schooling in the US in the later grades. Teachers should recognize that it is possible to achieve the standards for reading and literature, writing & research, language development and speaking & listening without manifesting native-like control of conventions and vocabulary.

English Language Arts

The Common Core State Standards for English language arts (ELA) articulate rigorous grade-level expectations in the areas of speaking, listening, reading, and writing to prepare all students to be college and career ready, including English language learners. Second-language learners also will benefit from instruction about how to negotiate situations outside of those settings so they are able to participate on equal footing with native speakers in all aspects of social, economic, and civic endeavors.

ELLs bring with them many resources that enhance their education and can serve as resources for schools and society. Many ELLs have first language and literacy knowledge and skills that boost their acquisition of language and literacy in a second language; additionally, they bring an array of talents and cultural practices and perspectives that enrich our schools and society. Teachers must build on this enormous reservoir of talent and provide those students who need it with additional time and appropriate instructional support. This includes language proficiency standards that teachers can use in conjunction with the ELA standards to assist ELLs in becoming proficient and literate in English. To help ELLs meet high academic standards in language arts it is essential that they have access to:

- Teachers and personnel at the school and district levels who are well prepared and qualified to support ELLs while taking advantage of the many strengths and skills they bring to the classroom;
- Literacy-rich school environments where students are immersed in a variety of language experiences;
- Instruction that develops foundational skills in English and enables ELLs to participate fully in grade-level coursework;
- Coursework that prepares ELLs for postsecondary education or the workplace, yet is made comprehensible for students learning content in a second language (through specific pedagogical techniques and additional resources);

- Opportunities for classroom discourse and interaction that are well-designed to enable ELLs to develop communicative strengths in language arts;
- Ongoing assessment and feedback to guide learning; and
- Speakers of English who know the language well enough to provide ELLs with models and support.

Mathematics

ELLs are capable of participating in mathematical discussions as they learn English. Mathematics instruction for ELL students should draw on multiple resources and modes available in classrooms— such as objects, drawings, inscriptions, and gestures—as well as home languages and mathematical experiences outside of school. Mathematics instruction for ELLs should address mathematical discourse and academic language. This instruction involves much more than vocabulary lessons.

Language is a resource for learning mathematics; it is not only a tool for communicating, but also a tool for thinking and reasoning mathematically. All languages and language varieties (e.g., different dialects, home or everyday ways of talking, vernacular, slang) provide resources for mathematical thinking, reasoning, and communicating.

Regular and active participation in the classroom—not only reading and listening but also discussing, explaining, writing, representing, and presenting—is critical to the success of ELLs in mathematics. Research has shown that ELLs can produce explanations, presentations, etc. and participate in classroom discussions *as they are learning English*.

ELLs, like English-speaking students, require regular access to teaching practices that are most effective for improving student achievement. Mathematical tasks should be kept at high cognitive demand; teachers and students should attend explicitly to concepts; and students should wrestle with important mathematics.

Overall, research suggests that:

- Language switching can be swift, highly automatic, and facilitate rather than inhibit solving word problems in the second language, as long as the student's language proficiency is sufficient for understanding the text of the word problem;
- Instruction should ensure that students understand the text of word problems before they attempt to solve them;
- Instruction should include a focus on "mathematical discourse" and "academic language" because these are important for ELLs.

Although it is critical that

- students who are learning English have opportunities to communicate mathematically, this is not primarily a matter of learning vocabulary. Students learn to participate in mathematical reasoning, not by learning vocabulary, but by making conjectures, presenting explanations, and/or constructing arguments; and
- While vocabulary instruction is important, it is not sufficient for supporting mathematical communication. Furthermore, vocabulary drill and practice are not the most effective instructional
- practices for learning vocabulary. Research has demonstrated that vocabulary learning occurs most successfully through instructional environments that are language-rich, actively involve students in using language, require that students both understand spoken or written words and also express that understanding orally and in writing, and require students to use words in multiple ways over extended periods of time. To develop written and oral communication skills, students need to participate in negotiating meaning for mathematical situations and in mathematical practices that require output from students

Appendix II: Application of Common Core State Standards for Students with Disabilities

The Common Core State Standards articulate rigorous grade-level expectations in the areas of mathematics and English language arts.. These standards identify the knowledge and skills students need in order to be successful in college and careers

Students with disabilities —students eligible under the Individuals with Disabilities Education Act (IDEA)—must be challenged to excel within the general curriculum and be prepared for success in their post-school lives, including college and/or careers. These common standards provide an historic opportunity to improve access to rigorous academic content standards for students with disabilities. The continued development of understanding about research-based instructional practices and a focus on their effective implementation will help improve access to mathematics and English language arts (ELA) standards for all students, including those with disabilities.

Students with disabilities are a heterogeneous group with one common characteristic: the presence of disabling conditions that significantly hinder their abilities to benefit from general education (IDEA 34 CFR§300.39, 2004). Therefore, *how* these high standards are taught and assessed is of the utmost importance in reaching this diverse group of students.

In order for students with disabilities to meet high academic standards and to fully demonstrate their conceptual and procedural knowledge and skills in mathematics, reading, writing, speaking and listening

(English language arts), their instruction must incorporate supports and accommodations, including:

- Supports and related services designed to meet the unique needs of these students and to enable their access to the general education curriculum (IDEA 34 CFR §300.34, 2004).
- An Individualized Education Program (IEP)[113] which includes annual goals aligned with and chosen to facilitate their attainment of grade-level academic standards.
- Teachers and specialized instructional support personnel who are prepared and qualified to deliver high-quality, evidence-based, individualized instruction and support services.

Promoting a culture of high expectations for all students is a fundamental goal of the Common Core State Standards. In order to participate with success in the general curriculum, students with disabilities, as appropriate, may be provided additional supports and services, such as:

- Instructional supports for learning— based on the principles of Universal Design for Learning (UDL)[114] —which foster student engagement by presenting information in multiple ways and allowing for diverse avenues of action and expression.
- Instructional accommodations (Thompson, Morse, Sharpe & Hall, 2005) —changes in materials or procedures— which do not change the standards but allow students to learn within the framework of the Common Core.

---

[113] According to IDEA, an IEP includes appropriate accommodations that are necessary to measure the individual achievement and functional performance of a child

[114] UDL is defined as "a scientifically valid framework for guiding educational practice that (a) provides flexibility in the ways information is presented, in the ways students respond or demonstrate knowledge and skills, and in the ways students are engaged; and (b) reduces barriers in instruction, provides appropriate accommodations, supports, and challenges, and maintains

- Assistive technology devices and services to ensure access to the general education curriculum and the Common Core State Standards.

Some students with the most significant cognitive disabilities will require substantial supports and accommodations to have meaningful access to certain standards in both instruction and assessment, based on their communication and academic needs. These supports and accommodations should ensure that students receive access to multiple means of learning and opportunities to demonstrate knowledge, but retain the rigor and high expectations of the Common Core State Standards.

References

Individuals with Disabilities Education Act (IDEA), 34 CFR §300.34 (a). (2004).
Individuals with Disabilities Education Act (IDEA), 34 CFR §300.39 (b)(3). (2004).
Thompson, Sandra J., Amanda B. Morse, Michael Sharpe, and Sharon Hall. "Accommodations Manual: How to Select, Administer and Evaluate Use of Accommodations and Assessment for Students with Disabilities,"
2nd Edition. Council for Chief State School Officers, 2005
http://www.ccsso.org/content/pdfs/AccommodationsManual.pdf . (Accessed January, 29, 2010).
high achievement

Sample of Works Consulted

Existing state standards documents

Research summaries and briefs provided to the Working Group by researchers.

National Assessment Governing Board, *Mathematics Framework for the 2009 National Assessment of Educational Progress*. U.S. Department of Education, 2008.

NAEP Validity Studies Panel, Validity Study of the NAEP Mathematics Assessment: Grades 4 and 8. Daro et al., 2007.

Mathematics documents from: Alberta, Canada; Belgium; China; Chinese Taipei; Denmark; England; Finland; Hong Kong; India; Ireland; Japan; Korea, New Zealand, Singapore; Victoria (British Columbia).

Adding it Up: Helping Children Learn Mathematics. National Research Council, Mathematics Learning Study Committee, 2001.

Benchmarking for Success: Ensuring U.S. Students Receive a World-Class Education. National Governors Association, Council of Chief State School Officers, and Achieve, Inc., 2008.

Crossroads in Mathematics (1995) and *Beyond Crossroads* (2006). American Mathematical Association of Two-Year Colleges (AMATYC).

Curriculum Focal Points for Pre-kindergarten through Grade 8 Mathematics: A Quest for Coherence. National Council of Teachers of Mathematics, 2006.

Focus in High School Mathematics: *Reasoning and Sense Making*. National Council of Teachers of Mathematics. Reston, VA: NCTM.

Foundations for Success: The Final Report of the National Mathematics Advisory Panel. U.S. Department of Education: Washington, DC, 2008.

Guidelines for Assessment and Instruction in Statistics Education (GAISE) Report: A PreK-12 Curriculum Framework.

How People Learn: Brain, Mind, Experience, and School. Bransford, J.D., Brown, A.L., and Cocking, R.R., eds. Committee on Developments in the Science of Learning, Commission on Behavioral and Social Sciences and Education, National Research Council, 1999.

Mathematics and Democracy, The Case for Quantitative Literacy, Steen, L.A. (ed.). National Council on Education and the Disciplines, 2001.

Mathematics Learning in Early Childhood: Paths Toward Excellence and Equity. Cross, C.T., Woods, T.A., and Schweingruber, S., eds. Committee on Early Childhood Mathematics, National Research Council, 2009.

The Opportunity Equation: Transforming Mathematics and Science Education for Citizenship and the Global Economy. The Carnegie Corporation of New York and the Institute for Advanced Study, 2009. Online: http://www.opportunityequation.org/

Principles and Standards for School Mathematics. National Council of Teachers of Mathematics, 2000.

The Proficiency Illusion. Cronin, J., Dahlin, M., Adkins, D., and Kingsbury, G.G.; foreword by C.E. Finn, Jr., and M. J. Petrilli. Thomas B. Fordham Institute, 2007.

Ready or Not: Creating a High School Diploma That Counts. American Diploma Project, 2004.

A Research Companion to Principles and Standards for School Mathematics. National Council of Teachers of Mathematics, 2003.

Sizing Up State Standards 2008. American Federation of Teachers, 2008.

A Splintered Vision: An Investigation of U.S. Science and Mathematics Education. Schmidt, W.H., McKnight, C.C., Raizen, S.A., et al. U.S. National Research Center for the Third International Mathematics and Science Study, Michigan State University, 1997.

Stars By Which to Navigate? Scanning National and International Education Standards in 2009. Carmichael, S.B., W.S. Wilson, Finn, Jr., C.E., Winkler, A.M., and Palmieri, S. Thomas B. Fordham Institute, 2009.

Askey, R., "Knowing and Teaching Elementary Mathematics," *American Educator*, Fall 1999.

Aydogan, C., Plummer, C., Kang, S. J., Bilbrey, C., Farran, D. C., & Lipsey, M. W. (2005). An investigation of pre-kindergarten curricula: Influences on classroom characteristics and child engagement. Paper presented at the NAEYC.

Blum, W., Galbraith, P. L., Henn, H-W. and Niss, M. (Eds) *Applications and Modeling in Mathematics Education*, ICMI Study 14. Amsterdam: Springer.

Brosterman, N. (1997). *Inventing kindergarten*. New York: Harry N. Abrams.

Clements, D. H., & Sarama, J. (2009). *Learning and teaching early math: The learning trajectories approach*. New York: Routledge.

Clements, D. H., Sarama, J., & DiBiase, A.-M. (2004). Mahwah, NJ: Lawrence Erlbaum Associates.

Cobb and Moore, "Mathematics, Statistics, and Teaching," *Amer. Math. Monthly* 104(9), pp. 801-823, 1997.

Confrey, J., "Tracing the Evolution of Mathematics Content Standards in the United States: Looking Back and Projecting Forward." K12 Mathematics Curriculum Standards conference proceedings, February 5-6, 2007.

Conley, D.T. *Knowledge and Skills for University Success*, 2008.

Conley, D.T. *Toward a More Comprehensive Conception of College Readiness*, 2007.

Cuoco, A., Goldenberg, E. P., and Mark, J., "Habits of Mind: An Organizing Principle for a Mathematics Curriculum," *Journal of Mathematical Behavior*, 15(4), 375-402, 1996.

Carpenter, T. P., Fennema, E., Franke, M. L., Levi, L., & Empson, S. B. (1999). *Children's Mathematics: Cognitively Guided Instruction*. Portsmouth, NH: Heinemann.

Van de Walle, J. A., Karp, K., & Bay-Williams, J. M. (2010). *Elementary and Middle School Mathematics: Teaching Developmentally* (Seventh ed.). Boston: Allyn and Bacon.

Ginsburg, A., Leinwand, S., and Decker, K., "Informing Grades 1-6 Standards Development: What Can Be Learned from High-Performing Hong Kong, Korea, and Singapore?" American Institutes for Research, 2009.

Ginsburg et al., "What the United States Can Learn From Singapore's World-Class Mathematics System (and what Singapore can learn from the United States)," American Institutes for Research, 2005.

Ginsburg et al., "Reassessing U.S. International Mathematics Performance: New Findings from the 2003 TIMMS and PISA," American Institutes for Research, 2005.

Ginsburg, H. P., Lee, J. S., & Stevenson-Boyd, J. (2008). Mathematics education for young children: What it is and how to promote it. *Social Policy Report*, 22(1), 1-24.

Harel, G., "What is Mathematics? A Pedagogical Answer to a Philosophical Question," in R. B. Gold and R. Simons (Eds.), *Current Issues in the Philosophy of Mathematics from the Perspective of Mathematicians*. Mathematical Association of America, 2008.

Henry, V. J., & Brown, R. S. (2008). First-grade basic facts: An investigation into teaching and learning of an accelerated, high-demand memorization standard. *Journal for Research in Mathematics Education*, 39, 153-183.

Howe, R., "From Arithmetic to Algebra."

Howe, R., "Starting Off Right in Arithmetic," http://math.arizona.edu/~ime/2008-09/MIME/BegArith.pdf.

Jordan, N. C., Kaplan, D., Ramineni, C., and Locuniak, M. N., "Early math matters: kindergarten number competence and later mathematics outcomes," *Dev. Psychol.* 45, 850–867, 2009.

Kader, G., "Means and MADS," *Mathematics Teaching in the Middle School*, 4(6), 1999, pp. 398-403.

Kilpatrick, J., Mesa, V., and Sloane, F., "U.S. Algebra Performance in an International Context," in Loveless (ed.), *Lessons Learned: What International Assessments Tell Us About Math Achievement*. Washington, D.C.: Brookings Institution Press, 2007.

Leinwand, S., and Ginsburg, A., "Measuring Up: How the Highest Performing state (Massachusetts) Compares to the Highest Performing Country (Hong Kong) in Grade 3 Mathematics," American Institutes for Research, 2009.

Niss, M., "Quantitative Literacy and Mathematical Competencies," in *Quantitative Literacy: Why Numeracy Matters for Schools and Colleges*, Madison, B. L., and Steen, L.A. (eds.), National Council on Education and the Disciplines. Proceedings of the National Forum on Quantitative Literacy held at the National Academy of Sciences in Washington, D.C., December 1-2, 2001.

Pratt, C. (1948). I learn from children. New York: Simon and Schuster.

Reys, B. (ed.), *The Intended Mathematics Curriculum as*

Represented in State-Level Curriculum Standards: Consensus or Confusion? IAP-Information Age Publishing, 2006.
Sarama, J., & Clements, D. H. (2009). *Early childhood mathematics education research: Learning trajectories for young children*. New York: Routledge.
Schmidt, W., Houang, R., and Cogan, L., "A Coherent Curriculum: The Case of Mathematics," *American Educator*, Summer 2002, p. 4.
Schmidt, W.H. and Houang, R.T., "Lack of Focus in the Intended Mathematics Curriculum: Symptom or Cause?" in Loveless (ed.), *Lessons Learned: What International Assessments Tell Us About Math Achievement*. Washington, D.C.: Brookings Institution Press, 2007.
Steen, L.A., "Facing Facts: Achieving Balance in High School Mathematics." *Mathematics Teacher*, Vol. 100. Special Issue.
Wu, H., "Fractions, decimals, and rational numbers," 2007, http://math.berkeley.edu/~wu/ (March 19, 2008).
Wu, H., "Lecture Notes for the 2009 Pre-Algebra Institute," September 15, 2009.
Wu, H., "Preservice professional development of mathematics Teachers," http://math.berkeley.edu/~wu/ pspd2.pdf.
Massachusetts Department of Education. Progress Report of the Mathematics Curriculum Framework Revision Panel, Massachusetts Department of Elementary and Secondary Education, 2009. www.doe.mass.edu/boe/docs/ 0509/item5_report.pdf.
ACT College Readiness Benchmarks™
ACT College Readiness Standards™
ACT National Curriculum Survey™
Adelman, C. *The Toolbox Revisited: Paths to Degree Completion From High School Through College*, 2006.
Advanced Placement Calculus, Statistics and Computer Science Course Descriptions. *May 2009, May 2010.* College Board, 2008.
Aligning Postsecondary Expectations and High School Practice: The Gap Defined (ACT: Policy Implications of the ACT National Curriculum Survey Results 2005-2006).
Condition of Education, 2004: Indicator 30, Top 30 Postsecondary Courses, U.S. Department of Education, 2004.
Condition of Education, 2007: High School Course-Taking. U.S. Department of Education, 2007.
Crisis at the Core: Preparing All Students for College and Work, ACT.
Achieve, Inc., Florida Postsecondary Survey, 2008.
Golfin, Peggy, et. al. CNA Corporation. *Strengthening Mathematics at the Postsecondary Level: Literature Review and Analysis*, 2005.
Camara, W.J., Shaw, E., and Patterson, B. (June 13, 2009). First Year English and Math College Coursework. College Board: New York, NY (Available from authors).
CLEP Precalculus Curriculum Survey: Summary of Results. The College Board, 2005.
College Board Standards for College Success: Mathematics and Statistics. College Board, 2006.
Miller, G.E., Twing, J., and Meyers, J. "Higher Education Readiness Component (HERC) Correlation Study." Austin, TX: Pearson.
On Course for Success: A Close Look at Selected High School Courses That Prepare All Students for College and Work, ACT.
Out of Many, One: Towards Rigorous Common Core Standards from the Ground Up. Achieve, 2008.
Ready for College and Ready for Work: Same or Different? ACT.
Rigor at Risk: Reaffirming Quality in the High School Core Curriculum, ACT.
The Forgotten Middle: Ensuring that All Students Are on Target for College and Career Readiness before High School, ACT.
Achieve, Inc., Virginia Postsecondary Survey, 2004.
ACT Job Skill Comparison Charts
Achieve, Mathematics at Work, 2008.
The American Diploma Project Workplace Study. National Alliance of Business Study, 2002.
Carnevale, Anthony and Desrochers, Donna. *Connecting Education Standards and Employment: Course-taking Patterns of Young Workers*, 2002.
Colorado Business Leaders Top Skills, 2006.
Hawai'i Career Ready Study: access to living wage careers from high school, 2007.
States' Career Cluster Initiative. *Essential Knowledge and Skill Statements*, 2008.
ACT WorkKeys Occupational Profiles™
Program for International Student Assessment (PISA), 2006.
Trends in International Mathematics and Science Study (TIMSS), 2007.

International Baccalaureate, Mathematics Standard Level, 2006.

University of Cambridge International Examinations: General Certificate of Secondary Education in Mathematics, 2009.

EdExcel, General Certificate of Secondary Education, Mathematics, 2009.

Blachowicz, Camille, and Peter Fisher. “Vocabulary Instruction.” In *Handbook of Reading Research*, Volume III, edited by Michael Kamil, Peter Mosenthal, P. David Pearson, and Rebecca Barr, pp. 503-523. Mahwah, NJ: Lawrence Erlbaum Associates, 2000.

Gándara, Patricia, and Frances Contreras. *The Latino Education Crisis: The Consequences of Failed Social Policies.* Cambridge, Ma: Harvard University Press, 2009.

Moschkovich, Judit N. “Supporting the Participation of English Language Learners in Mathematical Discussions.” *For the Learning of Mathematics* 19 (March 1999): 11-19.

Moschkovich, J. N. (in press). Language, culture, and equity in secondary mathematics classrooms. To appear in F. Lester & J. Lobato (Ed.), Teaching and Learning Mathematics: Translating Research to the Secondary Classroom, Reston, VA: NCTM.

Moschkovich, Judit N. “Examining Mathematical Discourse Practices,” *For the Learning of Mathematics* 27 (March 2007): 24-30.

Moschkovich, Judit N. “Using Two Languages when Learning Mathematics: How Can Research Help Us Understand Mathematics Learners Who Use Two Languages?” *Research Brief and Clip*, National Council of Teachers of Mathematics, 2009 http://www.nctm.org/uploadedFiles/Research_News_and_Advocacy/Research/Clips_and_Briefs/Research_brief_12_Using_2.pdf. (accessed November 25, 2009).

Moschkovich, J.N. (2007) Bilingual Mathematics Learners: How views of language, bilingual learners, and mathematical communication impact instruction. In N. Nasir and P. Cobb (Eds.), *Diversity, Equity, and Access to Mathematical Ideas*. New York: Teachers College Press, 89-104.

Schleppegrell, M.J. (2007). The linguistic challenges of mathematics teaching and learning: A research review. *Reading & Writing Quarterly*, 23:139-159.

Individuals with Disabilities Education Act (IDEA), 34 CFR §300.34 (a). (2004).

Individuals with Disabilities Education Act (IDEA), 34 CFR §300.39 (b)(3). (2004).

Office of Special Education Programs, U.S. Department of Education. “IDEA Regulations: Identification of Students with Specific Learning Disabilities,” 2006.

Thompson, S. J., Morse, A.B., Sharpe, M., and Hall, S., “Accommodations Manual: How to Select, Administer and Evaluate Use of Accommodations and Assessment for Students with Disabilities,” 2nd Edition. Council of Chief State School Officers, 2005

Glossary of Selected Terms

Glossary Sources
(DPI) http://dpi.wi.gov/standards/mathglos.html
(H) http://www.hbschool.com/glossary/math2/
(M) http://www.merriam-webster.com/
(MW) http://www.mathwords.com

Absolute value. A nonnegative number equal in numerical value to a given real number. (MW)

Addition and subtraction within 5, 10, 20, 100, or 1000. Addition or subtraction of two whole numbers with whole number answers, and with sum or minuend in the range 0-5, 0-10, 0-20, or 0-100, respectively. Example: 8 + 2 = 10 is an addition within 10, 14 – 5 = 9 is a subtraction within 20, and 55 – 18 = 37 is a subtraction within 100.

Additive inverses. Two numbers whose sum is 0 are additive inverses of one another. Example: 3/4 and – 3/4 are additive inverses of one another because 3/4 + (– 3/4) = (– 3/4) + 3/4 = 0.

Algorithm. A finite set of steps for completing a procedure, e.g., long division. *See also, Standard algorithm.* (H)

Analog. Having to do with data represented by continuous variables, e.g., a clock with hour, minute, and second hands. (M)

Analytic geometry. The branch of mathematics that uses functions and relations to study geometric phenomena, e.g., the description of ellipses and other conic sections in the coordinate plane by quadratic equations.

Associative property of addition. See Table 3 in this Glossary.

Associative property of multiplication. See Table 3 in this Glossary.

Assumption. A fact or statement (as a proposition, axiom, postulate, or notion) taken for granted. (M)

Attribute. A common feature of a set of figures.

Benchmark fraction. A common fraction against which other fractions can be measured, often ½.

Binomial Theorem. A method for distributing powers of binomials. (MW)

Bivariate data. Pairs of linked numerical observations. Example: a list of heights and weights for each player on a football team.

Box plot. A method of visually displaying a distribution of data values by using the median, quartiles, and extremes of the data set. A box shows the middle 50% of the data.[115]

Calculus. The mathematics of change and motion. The main concepts of calculus are limits, instantaneous rates of change, and areas enclosed by curves.

Capacity. The maximum amount or number that can be contained or accommodated, e.g., a jug with a one-gallon *capacity;* the auditorium was filled to *capacity.*

Cardinal number. A number (as 1, 5, 15) that is used in simple counting and that indicates how many elements there are in a set.

[115] Adapted from Wisconsin Department of Public Instruction, http://dpi.wi.gov/standards/mathglos.html, accessed March 2, 2010.

Cartesian plane. A coordinate plane with perpendicular coordinate axes.

Cavalieri's Principle. A method, with formula given below, of finding the volume of any solid for which cross-sections by parallel planes have equal areas. This includes, but is not limited to, cylinders and prisms.

Formula: Volume = Bh, where B is the area of a cross-section and h is the height of the solid. (MW)

Coefficient. Any of the factors of a product considered in relation to a specific factor. (W)

Commutative property. See Table 3 in this Glossary.

Complex fraction. A fraction A/B where A and/or B are fractions (B nonzero).

Complex number A number that can be written in the form a + bi where a and b are real numbers and $i = \sqrt{-1}$.

Complex plane. The coordinate plane used to graph complex numbers. (MW)

Compose numbers. Given pairs, triples, etc. of numbers identify sums or products that can be computed. Each place in the base ten place value is composed of ten units of the place to the left, i.e., one hundred is composed of ten bundles of ten, one ten is composed of ten ones, etc.

Compose shapes. Join geometric shapes without overlaps to form new shapes.

Composite number. A whole number that has more than two factors. (H)

Computation algorithm. A set of predefined steps applicable to a class of problems that gives the correct result in every case when the steps are carried out correctly. See also: *computation strategy*.

Computation strategy. Purposeful manipulations that may be chosen for specific problems, may not have a fixed order, and may be aimed at converting one problem into another. *See also: computation algorithm.*

Congruent. Two plane or solid figures are congruent if one can be obtained from the other by rigid motion (a sequence of rotations, reflections, and translations).

Conjugate. The result of writing sum of two terms as a difference, or vice versa. (MW)

Coordinate plane. A plane in which two *coordinate axes* are specified, i.e., two intersecting directed straight lines, usually perpendicular to each other, and usually called the x-axis and y-axis. Every point in a coordinate plane can be described uniquely by an ordered pair of numbers, the *coordinates* of the point with respect to the coordinate axes.

Counting number. A number used in counting objects, i.e., a number from the set 1, 2, 3, 4, 5,….

Counting on. A strategy for finding the number of objects in a group without having to count every member of the group. For example, if a stack of books is known to have 8 books and 3 more books are added to the top, it is not necessary to count the stack all over again; one can find the total by *counting on*—pointing to the top book and saying "eight," following this with "nine, ten, eleven. There are eleven books now."

Decimal expansion. Writing a rational number as a decimal.

Decimal number. Any real number expressed in base 10 notation, such as 2.673.

Decompose numbers. Given a number, identify pairs, triples, etc. of numbers that combine to form the given number using subtraction and division.

Decompose shapes. Given a geometric shape, identify geometric shapes that meet without overlap to form the given shape.

Digit. a) Any of the Arabic numerals 1 to 9 and usually the symbol 0; b) One of the elements that combine to form numbers in a system other than the decimal system.

Digital. Having to do with data that is represented in the form of numerical digits; providing a readout in numerical digits, e.g., a digital watch.

Dilation. A transformation that moves each point along the ray through the point emanating from a fixed center, and multiplies distances from the center by a common scale factor.

Discrete mathematics. The branch of mathematics that includes combinatorics, recursion, Boolean algebra, set theory, and graph theory.

Dot plot. *See:* line plot.

Expanded form. A multidigit number is expressed in expanded form when it is written as a sum of single-digit multiples of powers of ten. For example, 643 = 600 + 40 + 3.

Expected value. For a random variable, the weighted average of its possible values, with weights given by their respective probabilities.

Exponent. The number that indicates how many times the base is used as a factor, e.g., in $4^3 = 4 \times 4 \times 4 = 64$, the exponent is 3, indicating that 4 is repeated as a factor three times.

Exponential function. A function of the form $y = a \cdot bx$ where $a > 0$ and either $0 < b < 1$ or $b > 1$. The variables do not have to be x and y. For example, $A = 3.2 \cdot (1.02)t$ is an exponential function.

Expression. A mathematical phrase that combines operations, numbers, and/or variables (e.g., $3^2 \div a$). (H)

Fibonacci sequence. The sequence of numbers beginning with 1, 1, in which each number that follows is the sum of the previous two numbers, i.e., 1, 1, 2, 3, 5, 8, 13, 21, 34, 55, 89, 144….

First quartile. For a data set with median M, the first quartile is the median of the data values less than M. Example: For the data set {1, 3, 6, 7, 10, 12, 14, 15, 22, 120}, the first quartile is 6.[116] *See also:* median, third quartile, interquartile range.

Fraction. A number expressible in the form a/b where a is a whole number and b is a positive whole number. (The word *fraction* in these standards always refers to a nonnegative number.) *See also:* rational number.

Function. A mathematical relation that associates each object in a set with exactly one value.

Function notation. A notation that describes a function. For a function f, when x is a member of the domain, the symbol $f(x)$ denotes the corresponding member of the range (e.g., $f(x) = x+3$).

Fundamental Theorem of Algebra. The theorem that establishes that, using complex numbers, all polynomials can be factored. A generalization of the theorem asserts that any polynomial of degree n has exactly n zeros, counting multiplicity. (MW)

Geometric sequence (progression). An ordered list of numbers that has a common ratio between consecutive terms, e.g., 2, 6, 18, 54…. (H)

Histogram. A type of bar graph used to display the distribution of measurement data across a continuous range.

Identity property of 0. See Table 3 in this Glossary.

Imaginary number. A complex number (as $2 + 3i$) in which the coefficient of the imaginary unit is not zero. (M)

[116] Many different methods for computing quartiles are in use. The method defined here is sometimes called the Moore and McCabe method. See Langford, E., "Quartiles in Elementary Statistics," *Journal of Statistics Education* Volume 14, Number 3 (2006),

Independently combined probability models. Two probability models are said to be combined independently if the probability of each ordered pair in the combined model equals the product of the original probabilities of the two individual outcomes in the ordered pair.

Integer. A number expressible in the form *a* or –*a* for some whole number *a*.

Interquartile Range. A measure of variation in a set of numerical data, the interquartile range is the distance between the first and third quartiles of the data set. Example: For the data set {1, 3, 6, 7, 10, 12, 14, 15, 22, 120}, the interquartile range is 15 – 6 = 9. *See also:* first quartile, third quartile.

Inverse function. A function obtained by expressing the dependent variable of one function as the independent variable of another.

Irrational number. A number that cannot be expressed as a quotient of two integers, e.g., $\sqrt{2}$. It can be shown that a number is irrational if and only if it cannot be written as a repeating or terminating decimal.

Law of Cosines. An equation relating the cosine of an interior angle and the lengths of the sides of a triangle. (MW)

Law of Sines. Equations relating the sines of the interior angles of a triangle and the corresponding opposite sides. (MW)

Line plot. A method of visually displaying a distribution of data values where each data value is shown as a dot or mark above a number line. Also known as a dot plot.[117]

Linear association. Two variables have a linear association if a scatter plot of the data can be well-approximated by a line.

Linear equation. Any equation that can be written in the form Ax + By + C = 0 where A and B cannot both be 0. The graph of such an equation is a line.

Linear function. Many functions can be represented by pairs of numbers. When the graph of those pairs results in points lying on a straight line, a function is said to be linear. (DPI)

Logarithmic function. Any function in which an independent variable appears in the form of a logarithm; they are the inverse functions of exponential functions.

Matrix, pl. matrices. A rectangular array of numbers or variables.

Mean. A measure of center in a set of numerical data, computed by adding the values in a list and then dividing by the number of values in the list.[118] Example: For the data set {1, 3, 6, 7, 10, 12, 14, 15, 22, 120}, the mean is 21.

Mean absolute deviation. A measure of variation in a set of numerical data, computed by adding the distances between each data value and the mean, then dividing by the number of data values. Example: For the data set {2, 3, 6, 7, 10, 12, 14, 15, 22, 120}, the mean absolute deviation is 20.

Measure of variability. A determination of how much the performance of a group deviates from the mean or median, most frequently used measure is standard deviation.

Median. A measure of center in a set of numerical data. The median of a list of values is the value appearing at the center of a sorted version of the list—or the mean of the two central values, if the list contains an even number of values. Example: For the data set {2, 3, 6, 7, 10, 12, 14, 15, 22, 90}, the median is 11.

Midline. In the graph of a trigonometric function, the horizontal line half-way between its maximum and minimum values.

[117] Adapted from Wisconsin Department of Public Instruction, *op. cit*.
[118] To be more precise, this defines the *arithmetic mean*.

Model. A mathematical representation (e.g., number, graph, matrix, equation(s), geometric figure) for real world or mathematical objects, properties, actions, or relationships. (DPI)

Module. A mathematical set that is a commutative group under addition and that is closed under multiplication which is distributive from the left or right or both by elements of a ring and for which $a(bx) = (ab)x$ or $(xb)a = x(ba)$ or both where a and b are elements of the ring and x belongs to the set. (M)

Multiplication and division within 100. Multiplication or division of two whole numbers with whole number answers, and with product or dividend in the range 0-100. Example: $72 \div 8 = 9$.

Multiplicative inverses. Two numbers whose product is 1 are multiplicative inverses of one another. Example: $3/4$ and $4/3$ are multiplicative inverses of one another because $3/4 \times 4/3 = 4/3 \times 3/4 = 1$.

Network. a) A figure consisting of vertices and edges that shows how objects are connected, b) A collection of points (vertices), with certain connections (edges) between them.

Non-linear association. The relationship between two variables is nonlinear if a change in one is associated with a change in the other and depends on the value of the first; that is, if the change in the second is not simply proportional to the change in the first, independent of the value of the first variable.

Number line diagram. A diagram of the number line used to represent numbers and support reasoning about them. In a number line diagram for measurement quantities, the interval from 0 to 1 on the diagram represents the unit of measure for the quantity.

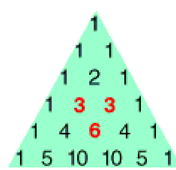
Numeral. A symbol or mark used to represent a number.

Order of Operations. 1. Do all of the operations inside parentheses, and/or above and below a fraction bar in the proper order, 2. Find the value of any powers or roots, 3. Multiply and divide from left to right, 4. Add and subtract from left to right.

Ordinal number. A number designating the place (as first, second, or third) occupied by an item in an ordered sequence. (M)

Partition. A process of dividing an object into parts.

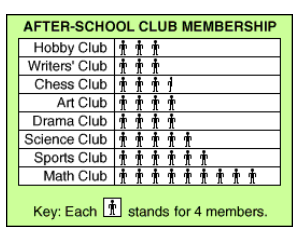
Pascal's triangle. A triangular arrangement of numbers in which each row starts and ends with 1, and each other number is the sum of the two numbers above it. (H)



Percent rate of change. A rate of change expressed as a percent. Example: if a population grows from 50 to 55 in a year, it grows by 5/50 = 10% per year.

Periodic phenomena. Naturally recurring events, for example, ocean tides, machine cycles.

Picture graph. A graph that uses pictures to show and compare information.



Polar form. The polar coordinates of a complex number on the complex plane. The polar form of a complex number is written in any of the following forms: $r\cos\theta + ir\sin\theta$, $r(\cos\theta + i\sin\theta)$, or $r\,\mathrm{cis}\,\theta$. In any of these forms r is called the modulus or absolute value. θ is called the argument. (MW)

Polynomial. The sum or difference of terms which have variables raised to positive integer powers and which have coefficients that may be real or complex. The following are all polynomials: $5x3 – 2x2 + x – 13$, $x2y3 + xy$, and

$(1 + i)a2 + ib2$. (MW)

Polynomial function. Any function whose value is the solution of a polynomial.

Prime factorization. A number written as the product of all its prime factors. (H)

Prime number. A whole number greater than 1 whose only factors are 1 and itself.

Probability distribution. The set of possible values of a random variable with a probability assigned to each.

Properties of operations. See Table 3 in this Glossary.

Properties of equality. See Table 4 in this Glossary.

Properties of inequality. See Table 5 in this Glossary.

Properties of operations. See Table 3 in this Glossary.

Probability. A number between 0 and 1 used to quantify likelihood for processes that have uncertain outcomes (such as tossing a coin, selecting a person at random from a group of people, tossing a ball at a target, testing for a medical condition).

Probability model. A probability model is used to assign probabilities to outcomes of a chance process by examining the nature of the process. The set of all outcomes is called the sample space, and their probabilities sum to 1. *See also:* uniform probability model.

Proof. A method of constructing a valid argument, using deductive reasoning.

Proportion. An equation that states that two ratios are equivalent, e.g., 4/8 = 1/2 or 4 : 8 = 1 : 2.

Pythagorean theorem. For any right triangle, the sum of the squares of the measures of the legs equals the square of the measure of the hypotenuse.

Quadratic equation. An equation that includes only second degree polynomials. Some examples are $y = 3x2 – 5x2 + 1$,

$x2 + 5xy + y2 = 1$, and $1.6a2 +5.9a – 3.14 = 0$. (MW)

Quadratic expression. An expression that contains the square of the variable, but no higher power of it.

Quadratic function. A function that can be represented by an equation of the form $y = ax^2 + bx + c$, where a, b, and c are arbitrary, but fixed, numbers and a 0. The graph of this function is a parabola. (DPI)

Quadratic polynomial. A polynomial where the highest degree of any of its terms is 2.

Radical. The √ symbol, which is used to indicate square roots or nth roots. (MW)

Random sampling. A smaller group of people or objects chosen from a larger group or population by a process giving equal chance of selection to all possible people or objects. (H)

Random variable. An assignment of a numerical value to each outcome in a sample space. (M)

Ratio. A comparison of two numbers or quantities, e.g., 4 to 7 or 4 : 7 or 4/7.

Rational expression. A quotient of two polynomials with a non-zero denominator.

Rational number. A number expressible in the form a/b or – a/b for some fraction a/b. The rational numbers include the integers.

Real number. A number from the set of numbers consisting of all rational and all irrational numbers.

Rectangular array. An arrangement of mathematical elements into rows and columns.

Rectilinear figure. A polygon all angles of which are right angles.

Recursive pattern or sequence. A pattern or sequence wherein each successive term can be computed from some or all of the preceding terms by an algorithmic procedure.

Reflection. A type of transformation that flips points about a line, called the *line of reflection.* Taken together, the image and the pre-image have the line of reflection as a line of symmetry.

Relative frequency. Proportionate frequency per observation. If an event occurs N′ times in N trials, its relative frequency is N′/N. Relative frequency is the empirical counterpart of probability.

Remainder Theorem. A theorem in algebra: if $f(x)$ is a polynomial in x then the remainder on dividing $f(x)$ by $x - a$ is $f(a)$. (M)

Repeating decimal. The decimal form of a rational number. *See also:* terminating decimal.

Rigid motion. A transformation of points in space consisting of a sequence of one or more translations, reflections, and/or rotations. Rigid motions are here assumed to preserve distances and angle measures.

Rotation. A type of transformation that turns a figure about a fixed point, called the *center of rotation*.

Sample space. In a probability model for a random process, a list of the individual outcomes that are to be considered.

Scatter plot. A graph in the coordinate plane representing a set of bivariate data. For example, the heights and weights of a group of people could be displayed on a scatter plot.[119]

Scientific notation. A widely used floating-point system in which numbers are expressed as products consisting of a number between 1 and 10 multiplied by an appropriate power of 10, e.g., $562 = 5.62 \times 10^2$. (MW)

Sequence, progression. A set of elements ordered so that they can be labeled with consecutive positive integers starting with 1, e.g., 1, 3, 9, 27, 81. In this sequence, 1 is the *first term*, 3 is the *second term*, 9 is the *third term*, and so on.

Significant figures. (digits) A way of describing how precisely a number is written, particularly when the number is a measurement. (MW)

Similarity transformation. A rigid motion followed by a dilation.

Simultaneous equations. Two or more equations containing common variables. (MW)

Standard algorithm. A conventional algorithm that is most efficient for computation.

Tape diagram. A drawing that looks like a segment of tape, used to illustrate number relationships. Also known as a strip diagram, bar model, fraction strip, or length model.

Terminating decimal. A decimal is called terminating if its repeating digit is 0.

[119] Adapted from Wisconsin Department of Public Instruction, *op. cit*.

Third quartile. For a data set with median *M*, the third quartile is the median of the data values greater than *M*. Example: For the data set {2, 3, 6, 7, 10, 12, 14, 15, 22, 120}, the third quartile is 15. *See also:* median, first quartile, interquartile range.

Transformation. A prescription, or rule, that sets up a one-to-one correspondence between the points in a geometric object (the *preimage*) and the points in another geometric object (the *image*). Reflections, rotations, translations, and dilations are particular examples of transformations.

Transitivity principle for indirect measurement. If the length of object A is greater than the length of object B, and the length of object B is greater than the length of object C, then the length of object A is greater than the length of object C. This principle applies to measurement of other quantities as well.

Translation. A type of transformation that moves every point by the same distance in the same direction, e.g., in a geographic map, moving a given distance due north.

Trigonometric function. A function (as the sine, cosine, tangent, cotangent, secant, or cosecant) of an arc or angle most simply expressed in terms of the ratios of pairs of sides of a right-angled triangle. (M)

Trigonometry. The study of triangles, with emphasis on calculations involving the lengths of sides and the measure of angles. (MW)

Uniform probability model. A probability model which assigns equal probability to all outcomes. *See also:* probability model.

Unit fraction. A fraction with a numerator of 1, such as 1/3 or 1/5.

Valid. a) Well-grounded or justifiable; being at once relevant and meaningful, e.g., a *valid* theory; b) Logically correct. (MW)

Variable. A letter used to represent one or more numbers in an expression, equation, inequality, or matrix.

Vector. A quantity with magnitude and direction in the plane or in space, defined by an ordered pair or triple of real numbers.

Visual fraction model. A tape diagram, number line diagram, or area model.

Whole numbers. The numbers 0, 1, 2, 3, ….

TABLE 1. Common addition and subtraction situations.[120]

	Result Unknown	Change Unknown	Start Unknown
Add to	Two bunnies sat on the grass. Three more bunnies hopped there. How many bunnies are on the grass now? $2 + 3 = ?$	Two bunnies were sitting on the grass. Some more bunnies hopped there. Then there were five bunnies. How many bunnies hopped over to the first two? $2 + ? = 5$	Some bunnies were sitting on the grass. Three more bunnies hopped there. Then there were five bunnies. How many bunnies were on the grass before? $? + 3 = 5$
Take from	Five apples were on the table. I ate two apples. How many apples are on the table now? $5 – 2 = ?$	Five apples were on the table. I ate some apples. Then there were three apples. How many apples did I eat? $5 – ? = 3$	Some apples were on the table. I ate two apples. Then there were three apples. How many apples were on the table before? $? – 2 = 3$

	Total Unknown	Addend Unknown	Both Addends Unknown[121]
Put Together/ Take Apart[122]	Three red apples and two green apples are on the table. How many apples are on the table? $3 + 2 = ?$	Five apples are on the table. Three are red and the rest are green. How many apples are green? $3 + ? = 5,\ 5 – 3 = ?$	Grandma has five flowers. How many can she put in her red vase and how many in her blue vase? $5 = 0 + 5, 5 = 5 + 0$ $5 = 1 + 4, 5 = 4 + 1$ $5 = 2 + 3, 5 = 3 + 2$

	Difference Unknown	Bigger Unknown	Smaller Unknown
Compare[123]	(“How many more?” version): Lucy has two apples. Julie has five apples. How many more apples does Julie have than Lucy? (“How many fewer?” version): Lucy has two apples. Julie has five apples. How many fewer apples does Lucy have than Julie? $2 + ? = 5,\ 5 – 2 = ?$	(Version with “more”): Julie has three more apples than Lucy. Lucy has two apples. How many apples does Julie have? (Version with “fewer”): Lucy has 3 fewer apples than Julie. Lucy has two apples. How many apples does Julie have? $2 + 3 = ?,\ 3 + 2 = ?$	(Version with “more”): Julie has three more apples than Lucy. Julie has five apples. How many apples does Lucy have? (Version with “fewer”): Lucy has 3 fewer apples than Julie. Julie has five apples. How many apples does Lucy have? $5 – 3 = ?,\ ? + 3 = 5$

[120] Adapted from Box 2-4 of Mathematics Learning in Early Childhood, National Research Council (2009, pp. 32, 33).
[121] These *take apart* situations can be used to show all the decompositions of a given number. The associated equations, which have the total on the left of the equal sign, help children understand that the = sign does not always mean *makes* or *results in* but always does mean *is the same number as*.

TABLE 2. Common multiplication and division situations.[124]

	Unknown Product	Group Size Unknown ("How many in each group?" Division)	Number of Groups Unknown ("How many groups?" Division)
	$3 \times 6 = ?$	**$3 \times ? = 18$ and $18 \div 3 = ?$**	**$? \times 6 = 18$ and $18 \div 6 = ?$**
Equal Groups	There are 3 bags with 6 plums in each bag. How many plums are there in all? *Measurement example*. You need 3 lengths of string, each 6 inches long. How much string will you need altogether?	If 18 plums are shared equally into 3 bags, then how many plums will be in each bag? *Measurement example*. You have 18 inches of string, which you will cut into 3 equal pieces. How long will each piece of string be?	If 18 plums are to be packed 6 to a bag, then how many bags are needed? *Measurement example*. You have 18 inches of string, which you will cut into pieces that are 6 inches long. How many pieces of string will you have?
Arrays,[125] Area[126]	There are 3 rows of apples with 6 apples in each row. How many apples are there? *Area example*. What is the area of a 3 cm by 6 cm rectangle?	If 18 apples are arranged into 3 equal rows, how many apples will be in each row? *Area example*. A rectangle has area 18 square centimeters. If one side is 3 cm long, how long is a side next to it?	If 18 apples are arranged into equal rows of 6 apples, how many rows will there be? *Area example*. A rectangle has area 18 square centimeters. If one side is 6 cm long, how long is a side next to it?
Compare	A blue hat costs \$6. A red hat costs 3 times as much as the blue hat. How much does the red hat cost? *Measurement example*. A rubber band is 6 cm long. How long will the rubber band be when it is stretched to be 3 times as long?	A red hat costs \$18 and that is 3 times as much as a blue hat costs. How much does a blue hat cost? *Measurement example*. A rubber band is stretched to be 18 cm long and that is 3 times as long as it was at first. How long was the rubber band at first?	A red hat costs \$18 and a blue hat costs \$6. How many times as much does the red hat cost as the blue hat? *Measurement example*. A rubber band was 6 cm long at first. Now it is stretched to be 18 cm long. How many times as long is the rubber band now as it was at first?
General	$a \times b = ?$	$a \times ? = p$ and $p \div a = ?$	$? \times b = p$ and $p \div b = ?$

[122] Either addend can be unknown, so there are three variations of these problem situations. Both Addends Unknown is a productive extension of this basic situation especially for small numbers less than or equal to 10.
[123] For the Bigger Unknown or Smaller Unknown situations, one version directs the correct operation (the version using *more* for the bigger unknown and using *less* for the smaller unknown). The other versions are more difficult.
[124] The first examples in each cell are examples of discrete things. These are easier for students and should be given before the measurement examples.
[125] The language in the array examples shows the easiest form of array problems. A harder form is to use the terms rows and columns: The apples in the grocery window are in 3 rows and 6 columns. How many apples are in there? Both forms are valuable.
[126] Area involves arrays of squares that have been pushed together so that there are no gaps or overlaps, so array problems include these especially important measurement situations.

TABLE 3. The properties of operations. Here a, b and c stand for arbitrary numbers in a given number system. The properties of operations apply to the rational number system, the real number system, and the complex number system.

Associative property of addition	$(a + b) + c = a + (b + c)$
Commutative property of addition	$a + b = b + a$
Additive identity property of 0	$a + 0 = 0 + a = a$
Existence of additive inverses	For every a there exists $-a$ so that $a + (-a) = (-a) + a = 0$.
Associative property of multiplication	$(a \times b) \times c = a \times (b \times c)$
Commutative property of multiplication	$a \times b = b \times a$
Multiplicative identity property of 1	$a \times 1 = 1 \times a = a$
Existence of multiplicative inverses	For every $a \neq 0$ there exists $1/a$ so that $a \times 1/a = 1/a \times a = 1$.
Distributive property of multiplication over addition	$a \times (b + c) = a \times b + a \times c$

TABLE 4. The properties of equality. Here a, b and c stand for arbitrary numbers in the rational, real, or complex number systems.

Reflexive property of equality	$a = a$
Symmetric property of equality	If $a = b$, then $b = a$.
Transitive property of equality	If $a = b$ and $b = c$, then $a = c$.
Addition property of equality	If $a = b$, then $a + c = b + c$.
Subtraction property of equality	If $a = b$, then $a - c = b - c$.
Multiplication property of equality	If $a = b$, then $a \times c = b \times c$.
Division property of equality	If $a = b$ and $c \neq 0$, then $a \div c = b \div c$.
Substitution property of equality	If $a = b$, then b may be substituted for a in any expression containing a.

TABLE 5. The properties of inequality. Here a, b and c stand for arbitrary numbers in the rational or real number systems.

Exactly one of the following is true: $a < b$, $a = b$, $a > b$.
If $a > b$ and $b > c$ then $a > c$.
If $a > b$, then $b < a$.
If $a > b$, then $-a < -b$.
If $a > b$, then $a \pm c > b \pm c$.
If $a > b$ and $c > 0$, then $a \times c > b \times c$.
If $a > b$ and $c < 0$, then $a \times c < b \times c$.
If $a > b$ and $c > 0$, then $a \div c > b \div c$.
If $a > b$ and $c < 0$, then $a \div c < b \div c$.

Illustration 1.

Number sets. (To be added)